



ANNOTATIONS  
ON  
**GREEN'S READINGS, PART II.**

*Containing Exhaustive, notes, full Explanations,  
Biographical and Historical Allusions,  
Model Questions, and Answers,  
Parsing and Analysis,  
Glossary &c.*

BY

**M. C. ROY.**

HEAD MASTER, CHURCH MISSION  
HIGH SCHOOL, LUCKNOW.

PUBLISHED BY

GIRDHARI LAL, BANWARI LAL.

ALLAHABAD.

---

1912.

All Rights Reserved.]

[Price Re. 1.]

---

---

COVER PRINTED AT THE MODERN PRESS, ALLAHABAD,  
BY PT. RADHA KANTA MALAVIYA, B.A.

---

---

# CONTENTS.

—:0:—

	PAGE.
V. Notes on Caxton ... ..	1-44
VIII. „ „ The Field of Cloth of Gold	45-83
IX. „ „ The Translation of the Bible ... ..	83-120
XIV. „ „ Raleigh and Virginia ...	112-161
XVII. „ „ Shakespeare's Early Life	1-44
XXIX. „ „ Death of Cromwell ...	44-86
XVIII. „ „ Pilgrim Fathers ... ..	1-11
XIX. „ „ Death of Raleigh ... ..	12-19
XX. „ „ The Puritans ... ..	20-33
XXVIII. „ „ Driving out of Long Par- liament ... ..	34-40
XXI. „ „ Milton ... ..	1-21
XXVII. „ „ Escape of Charles II. ...	21-35
VII. „ „ Flodden Field ... ..	1-14

*N.B.*—Owing to the wrong instructions conveyed to the author the notes could not be arranged serially. The contents will however guide the students in finding out the notes on different lessons.





NOTES  
ON  
**Green's Reading Part II.**  
**V—CAXTON.**

—:0:—

PAGE 21.—Introduction. *The cause*—the case; here, the 'casus belli' (L). *The cause...Lancaster*—the case, as it was represented by the Lancastrians. *Finally*—at last. *Finally lost*—ended and was not taken up again. *After*—afterwards. *Soon after*—shortly after the battle of Fawkesbury. *Able ruler*—fully competent to rule as a King. *Glory*—lustre. *The chief.....reign.*—The principal thing which shed lustre on his reign. *Springs*—arises. *Introduction*—the bringing in for the first time. *Art*—the skilled knowledge and practice. 'Of' after *glory* carries an attributive, and not an adjectival force, but the 'Of' after *art* has an adjectival force. 'With' before *the battle of Fawkesbury* denotes time simultaneous.

PAGE 22. PARA 1.—*Probably*—most likely. *Press* : —printing press. *Porch*—portico or roofed protection for a doorway at the entrance of a Church. *St. Donat's*—St. Donat's Church. *Bruges*—pronounce it as *Bruz*. *A Kentish...birth*—born in Kent. *Apprenticed*—legally bound by contract to another to learn a trade. *Mercer*—a merchant, specially in silks and woollen cloths. *Had already spent, i.e.,* before he came back to England. *Manhood, i. e.,* thirty years of his life since he came of age at perhaps

## NOTES ON GREEN'S READINGS PART II.

twenty-one or twenty-five. As the apprenticeship used to extend over seven years, Caxton must have been 16 or 18 when he bound himself down to the silk merchant in London, 23 or 25 when he left England for Flanders, and 58 or 60 when he returned. *Governor*—a title used then for President. *Guild*—also written *guild*, meaning a company or association. *Merchant adventurers*—enterprising merchants. *Engaged*—employ'd. *In the service of*—serving as a paid hand to. *Edward's*—Edward IV, son of the Duke of York. *Tedious process*—long, slow, and therefore, tiresome course. *Thrown aside*—discarded. *For*—in favour of. *For as much as*—since, because. *In the writing of*—in writing. *The same*—the work called the Tales of Troy. *My pen is worn*—I have worn out many quills (of which pens were made in those days.) *Not steadfast*—not firm, that is, my hand shakes. *Dimmed*—not seeing clearly. *Over much*—continual and excessive. *Prone and ready*—willing and prompt. *Age-old age*. *Creepeth*—comes slowly but surely. *Feebleh*—enfeebles or weakens. *All the body*—the whole body. *Divers*—various, several; now written *diverse*. *To address to them*—to put in their hands. *As hastily as*—as soon as—I might—I can. *At my .....dispense*—at a great cost and expense to myself. *To ordain.....print*—to arrange or set up in type the (above-named) book, i.e., the Tales of Troy. *After*—in according to. *As*—which. *Be*—are (in the Ind. Mood). *To the end that*—so that, in order that. *At once*—soon and at the same time. *Emprynted*—an obsolete word for *printed*. *As*—adverb of manner. *Were.....day*—the beginning and the end of the work of preparing the book took place on one and the same day. It was, all done in 24 hours. *Books*—the plural form points to the different parts of which the whole book was made up.

PARA. 2.—*Printing press*—machinery for printing. *Precious freight*—valuable cargo. *After.....of*—after having been absent for. *Through*—throughout. *Look for*—seek and expect. *Ease*—freedom from work. *Retirement*—withdrawal from an active life. *Plunging*—throwing himself headlong. *With.....energy*—with rigour of mind which marked his character. *New occupation*—his new work of printing.

PAGE 23 — *Red pale*—red stake, here, a red band. *Heraldic shield*—a plate of metal in the shape of a shield proclaiming and blazoning his profession. *Invited*—requested buyers to pay a visit, i.e., the shield bore words to that effect. *Enclosure*—enclosed space. *Chapel*—a private place of worship. *Alms houses*—small one-room houses from which alms were distributed the day before Good-Friday and at other times. *West front*—the west Entrance of the Westminster Abbey. *If...man*—if any man is willing. *Spiritual or temporal*—a clergyman. or a layman. *Runs his adverticement*—it was so written in his advertisement. *Advertisement*—a written or printed notice to inform the public of anything special. *Commemorations of Salisbury*—service books used in the Salisbury cathedral. *After the form of*—the same size as *pyes* or *pies* or *pi's*, a kind of small and mixed type. *Which has pyes or commemorations* for its antecedent. *Be*—are. *Well*—beautiful. *Truly correct*—quite correct. *Shall*—denotes promise. *Good chepe*—very cheap. *Practical man of business*—a man who made his work serviceable. *No rival of*—did not compete with. *Classical printers*—printers who edited the literature of ancient Greece and Rome. *To get a being*—to earn his livelihood. *Supplying*—furnishing. *Service books*—books of prayer. *Sermons*—a religious discourse. *Clerk*—the young student

of some religious house, corresponding to a theological student. *Histories of chivalry*—stories of knights and their adventures.

PARA. 3.—*Time*—spare time, leisure. *Much*—a great deal. *For*—in the interest of. *Higher literature*—writings of great authors. *Say fairly to hand*—was within easy reach. *Of any moment*—of any consequence or importance. *Reverence*—awe and respect. *Worshipful*—worthy. *Eternally*—for ever. *Edition*—preparing, printing and publishing. *Reprint*—a second edition. *By...them*—by his publishing a second edition of them (—Chaucer's Canterbury Tales). *A purer text*—Chaucer's own words in a more correct form. *Offered*—presented. *Available*—obtainable. *Works*—books writing. *Character*—kind. *Tongue*—language. *Continued...time*—kept on adding to the "Polychronicon" till the accounts reached his own time. *Version*—translation. *Tract*—a short treatise. *Syn*: a pamphlet, a brochure. *Stray.....England*—writings of eminent authors published for the first time, but at irregular intervals, from the Printing Press in England.

PAGE 24. PARA. 4.—*Bury...press*—although Caxton was busy as a printer. *From...rendering*—from books translated by himself. *Popular drift of literature*—tendency of the people towards literature, that is, which way the people inclined in literature. *Keen*—eager. *Demand*—claim or clamour for literature. *Mechanical*—literally, machine-like or machine-made, here it means, cut and dried or acting without any thought or judgment. *Temper*—disposition of mind, temperament. *A natural taste*—a taste that is not artificial—that comes from nature and not from information and guidance. *Simple-hretea*

*taste*—taste formed by feelings to which no violence has been done. *Taste*—appreciation and liking. *Enthusiasm*—glow and fervour. *Style and forms*—diction and turns of expression, outward mode and manner of writing. *Breaks out*—bursts forth, shows itself. *Curious*—quaint and old-fashioned. *Prefaces*—Introductory remarks. *Study*—room where he read and translated. *As*—then, at that time. This use of ‘as’ is now obsolete. *Happened*—it happened, used unpersonally, now not allowed. *Many divers*—many pamphlets and books of different kinds. *Pamphlets*—tracts. *To...French*—a little book in French reached me: this is the modern meaning of the expression, but in Caxton’s time it meant, he reached out his hand and took up a little French book at random. *Late*—lately. *Noble clerk*—a Theological student descended from some noble family. But the word here and before Vergyl (=Virgil) means a great writer and author. *Made in*—written in. *In which pleasure*—which book (the French translation of Virgil’s *Eneydos*) pleased me greatly. *Fair.....wordes*—easy and simple words and expressions. *Well-ordered*—nicely arranged. *Meseemed* it seemed to me. *Should.....requisite*—is very necessary. *As ..histories*—alike for its vivid language and its historical accounts. *Advised me*—when I had applied myself. *Deliberated*—weighed in my mind. *Concluded*—finally determined. *Forthwith*—straightway, at once. *Twain*—two. This use of *twain* is now obsolete.

PARA. 5.—*Involved*—implied or comprised. *A choice of English*—a selection of English style. *Schools*—system, classes. *French affectation*—artificial language used by the French. *English pedantry*—a ridiculous show of learning employed by the English. *Moment*—time. *When.....scitled*—when it was being determined what

should be the specific nature of the style and language to be employed in English literature. *Curious*—interesting. *The struggle over it*—the strife or fight to settle the question as to what should be the character of “our literary tongue.” *It*—refers to the “character of our literary tongue.” The “struggle” means the two parties fighting, each in behalf of its own cause. One standing up for “French affectation” and the other for “English pedantry.” *Honest*—fair-minded.

PAGE 25.—*Terms*—words and expressions. *Oflately*—lately. *Blamed me*—found fault with me. *Over many*—this phrase now means an excessively large number, and is written or understood as a compound word with a hyphen between. Here, however, ‘over’ should be taken separately, to mean. *Employed or used or put down*, that is, “I had over”—I had used. *Of*—by. *Common*—ordinary. *Old and homely*—long used and familiar, well known and simple. *Fain*—willingly, used as an adverb. *Comments*—remarks. *Good-humoured*—good-natured, one not easily put out, *Sturdy sense*—robust common sense. *The temptations . . . . . schools*—from being wheedled into rising the affected French style of language current among the courtiers and the Pedantic English employed by scholars. *Pointed to*—inclined in the direction of. *Be* is again used here archaically to mean *are*. *Antiquarian advisers*—those who advised him to adopt a Pedantic style of language. Antiquarian is used here in the sense of antiquated and obsolete. *Therein*—in it; “read therein”—read it, *Rude and wide*—coarse and gross, wanting in polish and chasteness. *Charters*—Title deeds and documents. *Abbot of Westminster*—John Estenry. *Models*—specimens of literary English which the Abbot advised him to adopt Standards, patterns. *Archives*—a place (library) where

public records, documents and title-deeds are kept. The word is almost always used in the plural number. *Dutch*—low German.

PARA. 6.—*To adopt*—to choose and use. *Current phraseology*—expressions in daily use. *Speech of common talk*—work-a-day language. *Rapid flux*—quick change, variable. “In a state of rapid flux”—in a state of transition, as regards language. *Varueth far*—is very different from. *Peculiar*—specially belonging to. *Happencd*—used impersonally as before. *Thames*—notice the absence of the definite article before it, as was the case in old English. *The sea*—the North sea or the German Ocean. *To refresh them*—to have some refreshment, that is, something to eat. *Mercer*—a wool and cloth merchant. The manufacture of cloth was then the chief industry of Kent and other places in the S. E. of England. *After*—for. *Goodwife*—read this as a compound word, meaning, the mistress of the house, being the feminine of the A. S. word *guman*—master of the house. *No French*—the language merchant’s English was so different from that then used in Kent that the goodwife took it French and said, she could not understand it. *Eyren*—the Kentish word then in use for eggs. *Another*—another mercer. *Puzzled printer*—perplexed printer (Caxton). *By cause of*—because of—owing to. *Kent in the Weald*—that part of Kent which lies in the Weald. *Weald*—*wold*, a tract of forest land. For Kent and the *Weald*, see Appendix. *Confession*—acknowledgement of some weakness. *To fore*—before. *After that*—that is superfluous in modern English. Here, as it stands, parse it as a subordinative connective introducing the noun clause after it, down to “quires,” in the objective case, governed by the Preposition *after*, *A*—a quantity of five or six



quires, in which case 'a' qualifies or points out "*quantity*" understood, and *quires* is the object of the Prep. "of" understood. Otherwise, 'a' points out the phrase "five or six quires" taken collectively as one thing. *I fell...work*—I lost all hope of finishing this first work of translation, namely "The Tales of Troy." *Therein*—it as before. *Laid*—were laid. *Apart*—aside. *In two years after*—for two years afterwards. *In this work*—(in modern English) in connection with this work.

---

# APPENDIX-I.



## I.—HISTORICAL.

Q.—Give a short account of the art of Printing ?

A.—The history of Printing may be divided into three periods: the earliest, the modern and the period between these two. The modern history of Printing, with all its improvements and resources, does not need telling. Subjoined are accounts of the other two periods:—

First, its *earliest history*: Long before the Christian era, relics from Assyria, Babylon and Egypt show, that they knew a crude form of printing with wooden blocks carried in the required manner and stamped upon the plastic clay. The early Greeks and Romans also made use of stamps with the characters reversed. The Chinese again had ages ago a system of printing, and long before printing was known in Europe, they had invented a method of wooden block-printing of their own. It is believed that it was in the 10th century they first began to print, though according to another authority, the art of printing from wooden blocks commenced from 593 A.D.

Printing is popularly believed to have been first introduced into Europe from China, but this is not likely as at the time (the 15th century) there was very little intercourse between this country and Europe. It was not until long after the return of Marco Polo from the East

to whom some authorities give the credit of having brought the art from China, that the first attempts at block-printing were made in Europe. Gutenberg is said to have first invented printing in Europe in 1438. The Dutch contest this statement and claim that Koster was first in the field. From Germany and Holland it spread into Milan, Venice, Florence, Paris, Rome, and lastly through Caxton, into England in 1476. In 1508 it found its way into Scotland. Printing was first practised in America, in the city of Mexico by Juan Cromberger, between 1536 and 1540, the latter year being the date of the earliest printed book from Cromberger's Press.

Q.—What do you know of Margaret and her husband?

A.—Margaret was an English princess, sister of Edward IV. of York. In 1468 she was married to Charles the Rash, or as Green calls him, Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy, and thus became the Duchess of Burgundy.

Charles the Rash (*Le Temeraire*), was born at Dijon in 1433. He was the son of Philippe le Bon and Isabella of Portugal. Before he succeeded to the duchy of Burgundy he was known only as Comte de Charolais, but in 1467 he became the Duke of Burgundy, and in the following year, he married Margaret, in order to strengthen his position in Dinant and Liege. He was killed in 1477 in a siege to Nancy. He was unusually well educated for his time, ceremonially religious, fond of chivalry, charitable to the poor and energetic as a ruler, but rash in war and merciless in discipline.

Q.—What is the Almonry at Westminster?

A.—A place in the Parish of St. Margaret's at Westminster, containing a chapel and a number of alms houses.

built and endowed by Margaret Beaufort, mother of Henry VII.

Q.—What are *Pyes* and *Commemoration of Salisbury*?

A.—Books printed in a small type, containing the ecclesiastical offices, known as *Sarum Missal*, *Sarum Breviary* and so forth, used in the Cathedral of Salisbury, and from thence, in other parts of England.

Q.—What is the history of the “Golden Legend”?

A.—It is a collection of *the lives of saints* made by Jaques de Voragine in the thirteenth century, valuable for the picture it gives of medieval manners, customs and thoughts. The young students of religious houses (clerks), for the exercise of their talents, were set to adopt the narratives of heathen writers to Christian saints. It was a collection of these “lives” that Voragine made, and thought deserving to be called “Legends worth their Weight in Gold.” Caxton translated these into English.

Q.—Give a brief account of what history records of Edward IV.

A.—Edward IV, second son of Richard, Duke of York, was born at Rouen, April 29, 1441, and during his father's life time bore the title of Earl of March. After his father's execution, Edward assumed the claims of his father, and marched on London, routing on his way the Lancastrians at Mortimer's Cross. He was declared King, March 3, 1461. Edward was popular in London for his courage, beauty and winning manners, and reigned secure till his marriage, first private and then avowed, with Elizabeth Wydevile, the widow of Sir John Grey, when his conferring honours upon her relatives, offended his chief partisan,

the Earl of Warwick, popularly known as the 'King-maker'. This resulted in Edward's fleeing to France in 1469. Here he obtained help from his brother-in-law, Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy, and it was at this time, most probably, that Caxton was introduced to Edward. He then went back to England and landed at Ravenspurne, 14th March 1471, and on the 14th of the next month, routed the forces of Warwick at Barnet, the King-maker himself being slain in the battle. On the 4th of May next, he almost destroyed the forces of Margaret at Tewkesbury. Margaret was imprisoned, her son was murdered, and Henry VI was in a couple of days found dead in his bed in the Tower, the suspicion being that he was assassinated by Richard, Duke of Gloucester, the third brother of Edward IV who now reigned in peace till his death, April 9, 1483. He was an able and powerful ruler, and founded the absolute or New Monarchy which ended with the Tudors. Silk manufacture and Caxton's printing press (1476) were introduced into England during his reign.

## II.—GEOGRAPHICAL.

Q.—Fix the positions of Tewkesbury, Kent, Flanders, Burgundy, Westminster, Salisbury, Canterbury, Zealand and Friesland:—

A.—*Tewkesbury* is an old town of Gloucestershire, in the vale of Evesham, on the Avon, near its confluence with the Severn a few miles N. W. of Cheltenham.

*Kent* ('the land of cantii'), a maritime county in the S. E. of England, is bounded N. by the Thames and its estuary, S. by Sussex, W. by Surrey, and E. by the Strait of Dover.

Area 1627 sq. miles. It is a promontary, ending in the Isle of Thanet. On the N. lies the isle of Sheppy. It is traversed from E to W. by the north Downs, but in the S. it includes the Weald (a proper name given to the tract of country lying between the N. and S. Downs and Sussex) and the Romney Marsh.

*Flanders* is composed of E. and W. Flanders, the former a province in the N. W. of Belgium, watered by the Scheidt and its tributaries, the Dender and the Lys; the latter being the most westerly provinces of Belgium, is bounded N. by the north Sea, and W. and S. by France of which both the Flanders were in the vassalage, until 1526 when the Treaty of Madrid abolished it.

*Bruges* means 'the place of bridges,' there being as many as 52 bridges within the town. It is a walled city, capital of W. Flanders, and 8 miles from the sea. Its library is remarkable for numerous work printed by Colard Mansion with whom Caxton learnt the art of printing. Bruzes, now in a state of decline from the rise of Antwerp, has still manufactures of linen, cottons, woollens and lace. In its days of glory, the splendid court of the Dukes of Burgundy was held at Bruges.

*Burgundy* is the name of a sovereign duchy, and of a province in the E. of France, in the basins of the Seine, the Loire, and Rhone, and comprises two regions: Lower and Upper Burgundy. The kingdom was originally formed by a Germanic people who first settled on the banks of the Vistula and Oder, and then wandered S. W. in the Neckar and Rhineland district in the 4th century. The duchy was founded by Richard, Count of Autun who died in 921.

*Westminster*—the city, is an important section of London, being bounded on the E. by the city of London, and on the S. by the Thames. The abbey is a venerable pile around which the city itself sprung. Sebert, King of the East Saxons who died in 616, is believed to have completed a Church and dedicated it to St. Peter, which was destroyed by the Danes. Edward the confessor, in its place built a church of great splendour for his time, and endowed it with a charter of ample power and privileges. The present building is that Church of Edward the confessor, although it has undergone many additions and alterations since then. The Kings of England are crowned here, and nearly all the famous men of England are buried here.

*Salisbury* is the country town of Wilts, 82 miles W. S. W. of London by rail. It was formed in 1215 by the emigration of the Bishop and villagers from the neighbouring hill of Old Sarum, from which it derives its Latin name. The *i* is dropped in the pronunciation of the word. It is famous for its cathedral, the spire of which is the highest in England, being 404 feet in height.

*Canterbury*, an ancient cathedral city of Kent, a country in itself, the metropolitan see of all England, is situated on the river Stour, 50 miles E. S. E. of London by the Dover road. It is also famous for its grand cathedral, originally built by Augustine, the first archbishop of Canterbury, although it has gone through many changes since his time. Becket's crown, at the eastern end of the cathedral, was erected during the life of the great archbishop himself, and after his assassination in the N. transept—a spot known afterwards as the *Martyrium*—in 1170, a splendid shrine was erected in his honour, and

a pilgrimage to this spot was the most popular act of piety in England during the middle ages. This shrine was demolished by order of Henry VIII in 1538.

*Zealand* or *Zeeland* is the most S. W. province of the Netherlands (Holland), bounded N. by South Holland, E. by North Brabant, S. by Belgium, and W. by the North Sea. It is made up of the islands lying between the mouths of the Scheldt and a number of other rivers falling into the German Ocean.

*Foreland* is made up of Foreland North and Foreland South. The former is a chalky headland, 190 feet high, in the N. E. extremity of Kent, 2 miles E. of Margate. The latter, also a chalky promontory, 16 miles S. of the former, lies between Deal and Dover. Between the two Forelands are the Downs and the Goodwin Sands.

### III.—BIOGRAPHICAL.

**Q.**—Say what you know of Green and Caxton ?

**A.**—*John Richard Green* (Rev'd) 1837—1883, historian, was the elder son of Richard Green, a citizen of Oxford, and was born in 1837. He was sent to Magdalen College School at the age of eight. His father died when John was twelve, and his uncle became his guardian. From the time he could read he was scarcely ever without a book in his hands, though his want of verbal memory made school lessons very trying to him. Of an emotional and religious temperament, from his boyhood he became eagerly interested in the old customs and the old world ways which were left in Oxford. When only fourteen he wrote an essay on Charles I and incurred the



of the first book of translation (Reenyell —The Tales of Troy) printed and published by him in Bruges, fetched £1820.

**Q.**—Arrange in alphabetical order all the Proper names mentioned in this lesson and give a short account of each.

**A.**—Aldi, Boethius, Brut, Chaucer, Cicero, Colard Mansion, Gower, Higden, Lydgate and Virgil.

*Aldi*—Aldine editions, so called from the name of the printer *Aldo man Manutius*, also often called 'Aldus the Elder,' a famous publisher, born at Bassano in 1449. From his press at Venice, established 1488, issued the celebrated Aldine Editions which instantly acquired a great reputation for improved typography. He compiled a Greek-Latin lexicon, and died in 1515. During the century that the Aldine press continued, it printed 908 separate works, mostly Greek and Roman classics, employed nine different kinds of Greek types, and fourteen of Roman, and was the first to use *italics*.

*Boethius*, full name, *Anicius Manlius Torquatus Severinus Boethius*, one of the most illustrious men of his time by his talents, his virtues, his services and his misfortunes, was born about 470 A.D., of a noble Roman family. He became the first favourite of Theodoric, King of the Ostrogoths, and was three times made consul. Theodoric, however, became melancholy and jealous in his old age, and had him listening to Boethius's enemies, put him in prison and then had him executed. Boethius was the last Roman of a noble note who studied the literature of Greece.

His most celebrated work, *De Consolatione Philosophiae* ('The consolations of philosophy'), written while in prison, was translated into old English by King Alfred the Great, and rendered into Modern English by Chaucer and Queen Elizabeth. Caxton printed Chaucer's translation of this work, and published it in 1479 or thereabouts. /

*Brut* or *The chronicle of Brut*—is a chronicle in rhyme, consisting of two parts, that of England, and Rome, written by the Norman poet Wace, born in the isle of Jersey about 1120. Caxton translated the former, calling it 'Caxton's chronicle' and printed and published it in 1480.

*Chaucer*, full name, Geoffrey Chaucer, the first great English poet, was born probably about 1340. It is not known where Chaucer was educated. He died probably at his own house in Westminster, in 1400. Traveller, soldier, courtier, diplomatist, member of Parliament, besides being a great poet, he passed his life among the most various and splendid aspects of the society which he has so vividly and minutely portrayed. The *Canterbury Tales* which Caxton published in or about 1478, were begun by Chaucer in 1373, and were left unfinished in 1400. These are 23 tales told by a company of Pilgrims going to visit the shrine of St. Thomas, Becket at Canterbury.

*Cicero*—Marcus Fullius, the prince of Roman orators, and famous also as statesman and man of letters was born 3rd January 106 B. C., near the town of Arpinum, under the Volseian Hills. His family was not accounted 'noble,' according to the standard of society in those days. Cicero

was removed by his father to Rome, where the future orator was instructed under Greek teachers in all the branches of a liberal education. At the age of 16 he entered on his special studies for the bar. He is the author of many philosophical and theological works, out of which the two translated by Caxton, through the French, in 1481, are *De Senectute* and *De Amicitia*, referred to in the text by Green as a "tract or two of Cicero." His best known and the most brilliant orations are those terrible '*philippics*' in which he denounced Antony, after Cæsar's murder, with relentless bitterness. These famous utterances were, however, fatal to him, for his name soon appeared in the list of the proscribed, and his head was severed from his body on the 7th December 43 B. C. in the 63rd year of his age.

*Colard Mansion*—is believed originally to have been one of the assistants employed by Fust and Gutenberg when these worked as partners in printing at Mainz. When the partnership was dissolved and the city of Mainz was involved in some of the continental wars, Colard Mansion fled from it and went to Bruges and settled there as a skilful calligrapher. It is supposed that here Caxton and Colard Mansion learnt and practised the art of printing, the former probably supplying Mansion with money to set up his press at Bruges and carry out their joint enterprise. When Caxton returned to England, Colard Mansion continued the business alone, printing and publishing numerous works still found in the town library of Bruges. Colard Mansion is supposed by many to have been the first teacher of Caxton in the art of printing.

*Gower, John*—an English Poet born about 1300.

Little is known of his life, as he lived like a recluse. He died 1408. He was probably the greatest English scholar of his day, and his works are full of learning. His chief English work is the *Confessio Amantis*, a dialogue in verse between a penitent and his confessor, a priest of Venus. It contains tales of love, magic, astrology &c. Caxton printed and published it in 1483.

*Higden, Ralph*—Little or nothing is known of him, except that he was a chronicler of Chester, who died in 1367. His *Polychronicon*—(= Various or very many chronicles) published in 1357, ran back to 'Creation,' and down to 1342 A. D. It is subdivided into seven books, and makes a tedious reading. Caxton brought the chronicles down to his own time and published it in 1482.

*Lydgate, John*,—an English poet, was a native of Suffolk, born not later than 1370, and died about 1460. He studied at Oxford, Paris and Padua, became a Benedictine monk of Bury St. Edmunds in 1397, and established there a school of rhetoric or literature, which acquired a wide renown in his lifetime. He died in the reign of Henry VI. Caxton printed Lydgate's *Court of Sapience* in 1481, and the *Life of our Lady* in 1484.

*Virgil*, the greatest of the Roman poets, was born at Andes (now Pietola), a hamlet about 2 miles from Mantua, on the 15th October, 70 B. C. His *Aeneid* is an epic poem in 12 books. It describes the wanderings of Aeneas with his father, son and wife, after Troy was taken by the Greeks and set on fire. Caxton paraphrased the story from the French into English.

## 4.—EXPLANATORY.

Q.—Give a purport summary of the whole piece, para by para.

*A.—INTRODUCTION*—The Lancastrians lost their case at last, when they lost the battle of Tewkesbury. Edward IV began to reign in peace, and ruled ably, all his male rivals being dead or slain. His rule derived its chief glory from Caxton's bringing the art of printing into England for the first time.

PARA. 1.—Caxton probably learnt printing at Mansion's press in Bruges. He was born in Kent, apprenticed to a London mercer and finally appointed Governor of the English merchant's guild in Flanders, where he spent 35 years of his life, before he became a copyist to the Duchess of Burgundy. But he found copying so tedious and trying to the flesh, that he discarded it, and took to learning and practising the art of printing.

PARA. 2.—In 1476 he returned to England with his printing press, and set it up in the Almonry at Westminster Abbey. Then, when most men retire from work and rest in their old age, he set to work with an energy, all his own, translating, paraphrasing, printing and publishing, service-books and various romances, to suit all sorts and conditions of men.

PARA. 3.—While employed in earning his livelihood in this manner, he did not neglect to do what he could, for the higher literature of his country. He edited many of the works of Chaucer, Lydgate and Gower,—

English poets of note ; published the chronicles of Wace and Higden, with additions of his own, and translated Boethius and did a version of *Æneid* from the French as well as two acts of Cicero.

PARA. 4 —If Caxton was busy with the work of editing, he was busier still with the work of translating. More than 2-9th of his entire work consists of only translation done by himself, showing by the extent of the demand, the bent of the people's mind at that time. All this work was done, however, not in a cut-and-dried mechanical manner, but zealously and carefully, the style and form of the language he employed being chosen with considerable refinement and delicacy of taste, both being the outcome of judgment free from the trammels of pedantry as well as affectation.

PARA. 5.—This work of translation meant, however, that Caxton must fix upon the kind of language he should use, and so the work he did in this direction was very important in the history of the English language. There were two parties then, as regards the work of translation: one, the artificial French party which puffed up and exaggerated the language; the other the bombastic English party which loved to parade their learning by making use of long-winded words of classical origin. Caxton stood between these, each trying to pull him over to its own side. But his healthy commonsense saved him from adopting the over-refined language of the courtier, on the one hand, and from the comically pseudo-scholastic language of the learned men on the other. He decided once for all to use work-a-day English.

PARA. 6.—But it was not at all easy to say what kind of English was work-a-day English in those days when the language talked by the people was constantly changing. Caxton himself said that the English spoken then was very different from what it was when he was born. But that was not all, for each country had a dialect of its own, hardly understood by people from another shire. As an example of this difficulty, he mentions a case when some men strayed into Kent and asked for eggs and were not understood till it was explained that they wanted “syren,” the word for eggs in Kent. Caxton himself came from Kent where they spoke a kind of coarse, rough provincial dialect, added to which there was another difficulty arising from his having been a resident of Flanders for 35 years. No wonder, therefore, that he nearly despaired finishing his *Tales of Troy* at one time, and put it aside for two years.

Q.—*Explain the following in simple English :—*

- (a) “ But the tedious process.....into Bruges.”  
(Page. 22. Para. 1).
- (b) “ My courage.....body.” (Page 22. Para. 1).
- (c) “ The printing press.....years.” (Page 22.  
Para. 2).
- (d) “ Through the next fifteen.....occupation.”  
(Pages 22, 23. Para. 2).
- (e) “ His red pale.....Westminster, a little enclosure.” (Page 23. Para. 2).

(f) "Caxton was a practical man.....histories of chivalry." (Page 23. Para. 2.)

(g) "But while careful.....to hand." (Page 23. Para. 3).

(h) "But by.....itself." (Page 23. Para 3).

(i)—"The need of these . . . . . to meet it" (page 24, para. 4.)

(j)—A natural . . . . . curious prefaces"—(Do.)

(k)—"But the work . . . . . language—(page 24, para. 5.)

(l)—"He stood . . . . . pedantry"—(Do.)

(m)—"It was a moment . . . . . Caxton's time" (Do.)

(n)—"But his . . . . . schools"—(page 25 para. 5.)

(o)—"While the old . . . . . English"—(Do.)

(p)—"To adopted . . . . . rapid flux"—(page 25, para. 6.)

(q)—"And coupling . . . . . translation" (page 26 para. 6)

A.—(a)—But the long and wearisome course of copying was soon given up, and the new art of printing which Colard Mansion had for the first time brought into Bruges was adopted.

(b)—My courage does not incline so promptly to hard work, as it used to do before, and because old age approaches day by day and weakens my constitution.

(c) After having been away from England for 35 long years, he returned now with his valuable cargo, —the printing press.



- (d) He had now arrived at an age when other men withdraw from an active life and seek rest, but throughout the fifteen years that followed, he threw himself headlong into the new work (of printing) with a vigour of body and mind, all his own.
- (e) His sign-board was a wooden shield with a band of red painted down the middle part of it, containing an invitation to all such as intended to buy books, to come to a small enclosed space near the Alms-houses at Westminster Abbey, where he had set up his printing press.
- (f) This public notice proves that Caxton was not a man to view with the Aldine Press in Venice or the printers of Rome, engaged in publishing typographical perfections, in the shape of Greek and Roman Classics, but one who had a practical turn of mind in the business he carried on, being resolved to earn his daily bread from his profession, by supplying clergymen with prayer-books, those who preached, with religious addresses, young students of religious houses with his edition of "Golden Legend." and knights and barons with delightful and agreeable stories of knights and their achievements.
- (g) But while he took care to earn his livelihood from the press, he found sparetime to render a great deal of service in the cause of such higher class of literature as came actually within his reach.

- (h) But also by his printing them again in a more faultless form. when he found an edition of Chaucer's "Canterbury Tales," comparatively free from textual errors.
- (i) That these translated books were in demand proves the kind of literary writing towards which the people were inclined, but although it appears that the demand for such writings was great, Caxton did not respond to it in an automatic disposition.
- (j) His quaint old-fashioned prefaces contain outbursts that show that his zest and power of discrimination, specially in the matter of the outward form and manner of language, was artless and unaffected.
- (k) But doing translation work implied that Caxton must carefully choose the kind of language he should use, and in this respect Caxton's work was of consequence in the history of the English language.
- (l) He occupied the middle position between two parties which looked at the work of translation from two different points of view: one was French, which advocated the use of unnatural artificial language; the other was English, which demanded the use of big and learned words.
- (m) It was a point of time when the special kind of language to be used in English literature was being determined, and it is amusing to see, from what he has written on the subject,

the contention that was going on in this respect in Caxton's time.

- (n) But his vigorous common-sense kept him from being carried away by the inducement offered by the courtier as well as the scholar.
- (o) On the other hand, the title deeds written in old English, which the Superior of the Westminster Abbey lent him as samples of English to follow, appeared to him to be more like low German than English.
- (p) It was not at all an easy thing to select the use of expressions then in vogue, even the language generally spoken was going through quick transition.
- (q) And when we take this (his being a native of Kent) in addition to his having been long away from England, when he lived in Flanders, we can scarcely feel astonished to hear the admissions he makes as regards his insufficient knowledge of the English language, in connection with his first work of translation, namely, the "Tales of Troy."

Q.—Write short explanatory notes on the following:—*Gouernor* (line 6, p. 22). *Adventurers* (line 7, p. 22). *For as much as* (lines 11 and 12, p. 22); *ouer much* (line 15, p. 22); *dispense* (line 21, p. 22); *this said book* (line 21, p. 22); *be* (line 23, p. 22); *pyes* (line 8, p. 23); *preachers* (line 16, p. 23); *to—fore—like* (line 20 p. 24) *ouer many* (line 3, p. 25); *homely* (line 5, p. 25) and *by cause* of (p. 26).

A.—*Gouernor*—an arbiter or umpire who settles disputes (this is the meaning here). *Adventurers*—enter

prising men of business ; *for as* &c., since (the last three words are sometimes written together as one word) ; *over much*, excessive (as it stands, *over* is adv. and *much* is adj. modified by it), *dispense*, an old word (now obsolete for *expense*) ; *this*—&c., the modern expression is “*the said book*,” *said-mentioned*, the whole—the mentioned book, *i. e.*, the book (already) mentioned ; *be* ;—an archaic or obsolete expression for *are* ; *pyes*, a book of prayers, *i. e.*, a Roman Catholic service book originally printed in a small black type called *pica* ; *preachers*—clergymen who were licensed to preach ; *to-fore-like* and *to fore* (line 9, p. 26)—see gram. appendix No. 5 ; *over many*, too many ; *like over much*, *over*, if parsed separately, is adv. modifying the adj. *many* ; *homely*—home like—plain and simple ; *by cause of*—see gram. matical appendix No. 5 which follows.

## V—GRAMMATICAL.

Q.—Parse *boy* (line 4, p. 22), *as* (line 6, p. 22), *Duchess Margaret* (line 9 p. 22), *Tales* (line 13 p. 22), *marked* (line 2. p. 23), *en closure* (line 4, p. 23), *rival* (line 13, p. 23), *resolved* (line 14, p. 23), *Chaucer* (line 23, p. 23) *more* (line 4, p. 24), *ihappened*. (line 14 p. 24). *to-fore-like* (line 20, p. 24) *me seemed*. (line 21, p. 24), *that* (line 29, p. 24) *Fain* (line 5, p. 25), *alike* (line 7, p. 25), *rather* (line 10 p. 25), *than* (line 10, p. 25,) *like*. line ( 15, p. 25), *easy* (line 17, p. 25), *so* (line 20, p. 25), *Sheffield mercer* (line 32, p. 25), *by cause of* (line 3, p. 26), *coupling*. (line 6. p. 26), *to fore* (line 9, p. 26) , *quires, laid and apart*. (line 12, p. 26.)

A.—*Boy*—same case as Caxton, subjective complement of *being* understood ; *as*—a prep. here, governing *Governor* in the obj. case—*D. Margaret*

page 24)—present of the simple infinitive, subjective complement of the verb "seems", *to see* (line 22, page 24)—present of the gerundial infinitive, denoting purpose, used as an adverb, modifying the adjective "requisite"—*to see* (line 31, page 24)—present of the simple infinitive, case in apposition with "it." *To have sailed* (line 24, page 25)—present perfect of the simple infinitive, in the objective case, governed by the preposition "for" *to refresh* (line 26, page 25)—same as above, in the present tense, object of "for."

NOTE.—Such infinitives are obsolete now. We use a gerundial infinitive in such places, without the *for* *to have continued* (line 11, page 26)—pres. perf of the simple infinitive, object of "purposed."

Q.—What does the *shall* denote in the piece?

A.—*Shall* (line 11, page 23) denotes *promise*.

Q.—Give the meaning or force of the following preposition in :—

- (1) *At* the press (line 1, page 22).
- (2) *Over* the porch (line 2, page 22).
- (3) *Into* England (line 4, page 22).
- (4) *To* a London mercer (line 5, page 22).
- (5) *Of* his manhood (line 6, page 22).
- (6) *Of* Merchant adventurers (line 7, page 22).
- (7) *Of* Troy (line 13, page 22).
- (8) *Through* the next fifteen (line 29, page 22).
- (9) *For* ease (line 30, p. 22).
- (10) *After* the form (line 9, p. 23).
- (11) *For* that worshipful man (line 22, p. 23).
- (12) *The poems of* Lydgate (line 26, p. 23).

- (13) A version of the *Eneid* (line 32, para. 23).
- (14) The *struggle over* it (lines 31 and 32, para. 24).
- (15) One of them (line 27, para. 25).
- (16) Change of language (lines 3, and 4, para. 26).
- A. (1) Denotes *location*.
- (2) Denotes *space*.
- (3) Denotes *motion* inside.
- (4) Denotes *relation*.
- (5) Carries a *partitive* force.
- (6) Denotes *composition*.
- (7) Means *concerning*.
- (8) Denotes *time*.
- (9) Denotes *object* or *purpose*.
- (10) Denotes *conformity*.
- (11) Denotes *behoof*—*on behalf of*.
- (12) Denotes *authorship*.
- (13) Carries the *subjective meaning* of the *possessive*.
- (14) Denotes *cause*.
- (15) Carries a *partitive* force.
- (16) Has *point of reference* for its meaning.

Q.—What figures of speech are the following? Give reasons for your answer in each case.

- (1) *The precious freight*.
- (2) *His daily bread*.
- (3) *Court and school*.
- A (1) *Metaphor* or *implied simile*, because it means,—*as* a precious freight is to a merchant, so was the printing press to Caxton.
- (2) *Synecdoche*, for the *part* (bread) stands for the *whole* (the necessities of life).

- (3) *Metonymy*, as it substitutes the *container* ("court" and "school") for what it contains (courtiers and scholars).

Q.—Change the following into the indirect form of speech:—

- (a) "For as much as . . . in one day" (page 22, para. 1.)  
 (b) "If it please . . . good chepe" (page 23, para. 1.)  
 (c) "Having no work . . . a leaf or twain" (page 24, para. 2.)  
 (d) "Some honest . . . my translations" (pages 24 and 25, paras. 3 and 1.)  
 (e) "I took an old book . . . understand it" (page 25, para. 1.)  
 (f) "Common English . . . understood him well" (page 25, para. 2.)  
 (g) "Lo! what . . . language" (page 26, para. 1.)  
 (h) "When all these things . . . in this work" (page 26, para. 1.)

A.—(a) Caxton has told us in the preface to his first printed work, that for as much as in the writing it, his pen work, his hand was weary and not steadfast, his eyes dimmed with overmuch looking on the white paper, and his courage not so prone and ready to labour as it had been, and that age crept on him daily and feebled all the body, and also because he had promised to divers gentlemen and to his friends to address to them as hastily as he might, the said book, herefore, he had practised and learn-

ed at his great charge and dispense to ordain the said in print after the manner and form as they might see, and was not written with pen and ink as other books were, to the end that every man might have them at once, for all the books of that story there empyrnted as they saw had been begun in one and soal finished in one day.

- (b) His advertisement ran to the effect that if it pleased any man, spiritual or temporal, to buy any pyes of . . . letter, which were well and truly correct, he should come to . . . , pale, and he should have them good chepe.
- (c) He has said in the preface to his Eneid, that having no work in hand, he sitting in his study where as lay . . . books, it happened that to his hand had come a . . . French, which late had been translated . . . France,—which book was named Eneydos, and made in . . . Vergyl—in which book he had had great pleasure . . . in French which he had never seen to-fore-like, . . . ordered which book as it had seemed to him, should be . . . histories; and that when he had advised himself to the said book, he had deliberated and concluded to translate . . . English. and had forthwith taken a pen and ink and written a leaf or twain.
- (d) Some honest and great clerks had been with him and desired him to write the most curious terms that he could find, and that some gentlemen of



late had blamed him, saying that in his translations he had . . . peope, and had desireds him in his translations.

(e) He had taken an old book . . . therein, and certainly the English had been so rude and . . . it.

(f) Common English that was spoken in one shire varied from another so much, that it in his days it had been in a ship . . . , and . . . wind they had tarried at Foreland and had gone . . . them. And one of them . . . mercer, had come into a house and asked for meat, and especially he had asked for them after eggs. And the good wife had, answered . . . French. And the merchant had been angry . . . eggs, but she had not understood him. And then at last another had said . . . Eyren, then . . . had said she had understood him well.

(g) Caxton asked in wonder what a man should write then in these days, eggs or eyren, for certainly it was hard to please . . . language.

(h) Caxton confessed that when all those things had come to fore him, after that he had made and written a five or six quires, he had fallen in despair of that work, and purposed . . . therein, and . . . apart, and in two . . . in that work.

Q.—Analyse the following sentences, clause-wise and word-wise, in a tabular form:—

1. "It was probably . . . into England"  
(page 22, para. 1.)

2. "A Kentish boy . . . of Burgundy"  
(page 22, para. 1.)
3. "His red pale . . . to the poor" (page  
23, para. 1)
4. "Caxton was . . . of chivalry" (page 23,  
para. 1.)
5. "The need of these . . . to meet it"  
(page 24, para. 2.)
6. "I took an old book . . . than to Eng-  
lish" (page 25, para. 1.)



hienl	is	...	there	in the lemper
	seems	...	to have been keen	...
	prepared	...	to meet it	with which
Principal clause and more than one subordinate clause.				
	took read	an old book ...	... ...	... therein
	' was could not under- stand	... it	so rude and broad ...	certainly well
glish	seemed	...	more like	to.....English
minster	lent	which	...	as.....house

Principal clause and more than one (two) subordinate clause.

.....at the time.	Same as A in adversative co-ordination, with it	but	nothing	mechanical
B.—But there is nothing mechanical in the temper.	Adv. Cl. of concession to B modifg, "mechanical"	as	the demand	...
C.—Keen as.....to have been	Adj.-Cl. to B, qualifying "temper,"	with which	Caxton	...

NOTE—A mixed sentence, having more than one (two) principal clause.

6 A—I took an old book B—And read therein ...	Principal Clause ... Same as A in com, co-ord. with it	... and	I (I)	...
C.—And.....broad D.—I.....It	Ditto Adv. Cl. of effect, modifg, "rude and broad"	and (that)	the English I	...
E.—While....chartered seemed....to English.	Same as A, in adversative co ord. with it,	while—but on	the Charters	old English
F.—Which.....house	Adj. Cl. to E, qualifying, charters,	the other hand which	the Abbott	of West

NOTE—Mixed sentence containing more than one (three) principal clause.

## VI—GENERAL AND MISCELLENEOUS.

Q.—What is the difference between *Art* and *Science*?

A.—*Art* is that which requires *practical knowledge*; *Science* deals with exact *classified knowledge*. For example, every man knows his mother-tongue as an art, but he may not know it as a science, till he studies all its laws.

Q.—Give all the synonyms of *copyist*, and distinguish them from one another.

A.—*Amanuensis* and *Secretary*. A *copyist* only copies—an *amanuensis* writes to the dictation of another. A *secretary* only writes under the direction of another. A person who does not like to write or cannot write with his own hand, employs an *amanuensis*. One who wishes to have many copies of a piece of writing engages a *copyist*. One who cannot do all his writing in person, keeps a *secretary*.

Q.—When do we use the expression “five-and-thirty,” and when only “thirty-five-?”

A.—When we wish to emphasise the number, we use the former, and on ordinary occasions we use the latter.

Q.—What do you know of the *Tales of Troy*.

A.—*Troy* was an ancient city in *Asia Minor*. *Priam* was its king. *Priam's* son, *Paris*, carried away *Helen*, the wife of *Menelaus*, king of *Sparta*. This led to what is called the *Trojan war* which lasted ten years, during which *Menelaus* and his friends, the princes of *Greece*, laid siege on *Troy* and utterly demolished it, slaying almost every one of any consequence. *Homer* has written an epic on the subject in *Greek*. The story resembles,

to a certain extent, the account of the stealing of Sita by Ravan and Ram's war with Ravan, as described by Valmiki in his famous epic, the Ramayan, in Sanskrit.

Q.—Write down all the prepositional phrases connected with the word 'hand,' and give their meanings, with examples.

A.—They are five altogether in number :—*in hand*, *on hand*, *at hand*, *to hand* and *off hand*. *In hand* means *engaged* when it refers to *work* ; as, I have much work *in hand*—I have much work in which I am engaged. It also means *under control*, when it refers to some *living* thing ; as, he has the horse well *in hand*—he has the horse well under control. *On hand* means *immediate engagement* when it refers to work ; as, I have much work *on hand*—I have much work which lies immediately waiting for me. *At hand* means *nearness* or *within reach* ; as, I have no dictionary *at hand*—I have no dictionary near me or within reach. *To hand* means *available* ; as, he has no money *to hand*—he has no money which is available. *Off hand* means *rather abrupt* or *impertinent* ; as, he is *off hand* in his manners—He is rather abrupt or impertinent or presumptuous in his manners.

Q.—Comment on the proper name *Cicero*.

A.—The real name of the Roman orator was Tully, but Plutarch says he had a *cicer* (Latin for a wart) or a lump of flesh growing on the tip of his nose, which gave him the name of *Cicero*.

Q.—What is the difference between *translation* and *transliteration* ?

A.—Translation is the *rendering* of any thing from one language into another. *Transliteration* is the *exact*

*reproduction* of anything in the *orthography* of another language ; as, *is bat par* is the transliteration, in English letters, of that Urdu phrase.

Q.—Write a short note on the expression “ *mine eyes*.”

A.—In old English *my* was used before *consonants* ; as, *my pen* ; *mine* was used before *vowels* ; as, *mine eyes*.

Q.—Why was the English mercer angry when ‘ the good wife,’ said she could speak no French ?

A.—Because he thought he was accused of having spoken in French when he knew he was speaking English.

Q.—For what English word are we indebted to the Proper noun Canterbury ?

A.—“ *Canter* ” denoting a particular kind of speed or pace at which a horse goes. It is the gallop of the horses of pilgrims in olden times when they went to visit the shrine of Becket in the Canterbury Cathedral.

## VII.—Glossary

(N. B.—The meanings are to be understood in connection with the context.)

Affectation—artificialness.

Advertisement—Public notice.

Antiquarian—Learned and old fashioned.

Archives—Room for old records.

Break out—Burst forth.

Broad—Coarse.

Cause—Case.

Characteristic—Carrying a mark.

Deliberated—Weighed in mind, pondered.

Energy—Vigour of mind.

Enthusiasm—Glow and inspiration.

Freight—Cargo.

Forthwith—At once.

Flux—Change, transition.

Glory—Fame.

Good humoured—Pleasant tempered.



- Commemorations—Prayer-books.  
 Chronicle—Historical account.  
 Chivalry—Adventures of knights.  
 County—Shires.  
 Charters—Title-deeds.  
 Current—In vogue.  
 Curious terms—Quaint words.  
 Confession—Owning up.  
 Court—Courtiers.  
 Comments—Remarks.  
 Dispense—Expense.  
 Divers—Different.  
 Homely terms—plain words.  
 Introduction—The bringing in of a thing for the first time.  
 Involved—Implied.  
 Living—Livelihood.  
 Mercer—A wool and cotton merchant.  
 Merchant adventurers—Enterprising merchants.  
 Moment—Importance.  
 Meckanical—Automatic, machine like.  
 Ordain—Arrange, set in order.  
 Plunging—Diving headlong.  
 Practical man—A man who works instead of dreaming.  
 Pamphlets—Tracts.  
 Pedantry—Ridiculous show of learning, a parade of learning.  
 Phraseology—Expressions and phrases.  
 Puzzled—Perplexed. Polychronicon—a multitude of historical accounts.  
 Retirement—Withdrawal from all active work.  
 Rude—Rough, uncouth.  
 Spiritual man—A clergyman.  
 Sturdy—Robust, strong.  
 Sence—Commonsense.  
 Schools—Scholars.  
 Temper—Disposition.  
 Temporal man—A layman (not a clergyman).

## THE FIELD OF CLOTH OF GOLD

Introduction—*Accession*.—Entrance, coming to the throne. *House*—family. *Civil wars*—the series of battles fought among the people of England (the Lancastrians and the Yorkists), known otherwise as the 'wars of roses'. *Aim*—object. *Peace*—rest from fighting. *Raise*—lift up, increase. *Of the crown*—of the king. *The barons*—the landed noblemen. *Set up*—raised (on the throne). *Put down*—dethroned. *The feudal character of England*—the feudal system of Government which marked or distinguish'd England. *Rule . . . Parliaments*—the infrequent occasions when the House of Lords and the House of Commons met or held their sessions. *Free*—set free. *The monarchy*—the king's office, *i.e.*, the king. *Restraints*—checks, limitations. *Put*—set. *Power*—position and authority. *Patiently*—calmly and quietly. *built up*—reared. *A home*—in England. *Sirring temp'r*—active or excitable disposition. *Corresponding*—proportionately equal. *Influence*—power. *A road*—in the continent (of Europe) outside England. *Guidance*—lead or leading. *Minister*—councillor or chancellor. *Mixed*—took part. *Contest*—strife or struggle, dispute. *The house*—the reigning family. *Waging*—carrying on, were engaged in. *Supremacy*—ascendancy, supreme power. *Both powers*—both kings (of France and Austria). *Sought*—tried to secure. *Interviews*—meetings. *For this purpose*—to attain this object *i.e.*, the friendship of Henry VIII. *So rival*—Competed as rivals. *Splendour*—magnificence. *Field*—the open space of country. *Field . . . gold* is a shortened expression for the field of the cloth of gold, meaning,

where the white field was (figuratively) spread or covered over with cloth made of gold.

*Page 32.—Para. 1—Was to be*—it was settled that the place of meeting must or should be the open country lying between. *Pale*—boundary marked by stakes. *Skilful workmen*—skilled labourers or artisans. *Employed*—engaged. *Erecting*—setting up. *Pavilions*—large ornamental tents.

*Page 33.—To lodge*—to provide lodging room for. *The two courts*—the kings, queens, and courtiers of England and France. *Flocked in*—came together in large numbers. *In fitting themselves*—in providing themselves with the necessary outfit. *Display*—show. *Heralds*—officers who marshal processions and superintend public ceremonies. *Backwards and forwards*—to and fro between the two courts. *Incessantly*—continually. *Arranging*—settling. *Precautions*—previous steps for preventing mischief. *Etiquettes*—forms of ceremony to be observed. It is a French word meaning a card or ticket containing directions as to what dress should be worn, what forms and manners should be observed on public occasions. *Might*—could be permitted. *But neither . . . exchange*—but neither Henry VIII nor Francis I, should venture to be in the court of the other, unless it be done on the basis of paying visit for visit, i.e., Henry visits the court of Francis when the latter is absent, visiting the court of Henry. *Mutually visit*—each visiting the other's queen at the same time. *At home*—ready to receive the other. *Brother king*—brother (—friend) the other king. *Visited him*—called on him. *Hostage*—a pledge or guarantee.

*Page 33, Para. 2:—Magnificent dome*—a splendid tent in the form of a cupola. *Sustained*—supported, held up. *Mighty*—huge and strong. *Mast*—pole. *Without*—on the outside, that is, the outer part of the tent was covered with gold cloth. *Lined*—the inside of it was covered. *Orbs*—constellations, the sun, the moon and the stars. *Of heaven*—visible in the sky. *Worked*—woven by means of needle-work. *In gold*—in threads of gold. *Top*—the apex of the tent ie; the upper end of the mast. *Twisted* inter-twined. *Gold*—gold cords. *Cyprus*—famous then for pure, bright and costly gold. *Display*—pageant, show. *Obliged*—compelled, driven. *Lodgings*—tents for temporary dwelling. *Solid*—substantial. *Mostly*—most of them. *On them*—refers to the lodgings or tents. *About*—in the matter of. *Hungings*—ornaments made of brocade, lace, fringe &c. trimmings. *Framework*—structure. *English timber*—oak. *Bacchus*—a figure of the god of wine. *Presided*—superintended. *Subordinate*—lesser. *Red.....wines*—wines, white, deep red and light red (like claret from the Bordeaux district) in colour. *Motto*—device, a short sentence used as a badge or sign. *Good cheer* etc (in the footnote) means, lit who will drink and make merry. *Labelled the savage man*—a ticket pasted on the figure of a wild looking man, that is the motto on the ticket pasted on the figure of a ferocious looking man before the door of the tent was not so courteous as that stuck on the fountains of wine. *Prevails*—proves victorious. *Adhere*—am attached. *Stone work*—stone masonry. *The inside ..... arras*—Most expensive and gay coloured tapestries were suspended inside the castle made of canvas. *Arras*—is the name of a province in France where there hangings were

made of woven silk and wool, and ornamented with figures. *Galleries*—passages or corridors. *Utmost*—extreme. *Advantage*—benefit, gain

*Page 34*—*Stability*—durability, lastingness. *High-wind*—a blizzard, a strong wind. *Levelled with the dust*—Knocked it down and made it level with the dust.

*PARA. 3.*—*Conference*—an interview and consultation. *Upheal*—result. *Their children*—Henry's daughter by Catherine of Aragon and the eldest son (Henry Francis. The daughter became notorious afterwards in history as 'the Bloody Mary' *Nominally*—ostensibly outwardly. *With a view to*—having for its aim or object. *Hypothetical*—conditional, stipulated suppositional. *To secure his neutrality*—to ensure that Henry will help neither party (Francis or Charles of Austria). *The affairs of Scotland*—Matters relating to the Government of Scotland. Before this, in the battle of Flodden (1573) the Scots were defeated and their King (James IV) was slain. James had sided against Henry VIII, and with Louis XII whom Francis I had married. *To be settled*—should be determined or arranged. *Arbitration*—Joint decision.

*PARA. 4*—*Salute*—Greeted. *At.....moment*—simultaneously. *The English hawthorn &c.* a thorny tree, or rather plant, peculiar to England, also called quickset, generally planted as a hedge. The raspberry plant was peculiar to France, and these two trees or plants were, therefore, chosen as national emblems, to denote the loving embrace or friendly relation into which Henry VIII and Francis I had entered. *Lis's*—fighting rings or arenas. *Broiler'd*—embroidered, raised needle work. *Seed-pearls*—small pearls. It means, the cloth which covered the footstools, had raised-work done on it with small

pearls. *Jousting*—tilting. *Armour*—defensive armour, such as, cuirass, breastplate, hebut &c. *Had come*—had been developed. *Cumbersome perfection*—perfect or downright heaviness. *Fire-arms*—guns. *Amusements*—diversions. *At the barriers*—fighting on foot within the enclosure (also called *barrier* itself). *The sport*, i. e. wrestling. *Challenged* . . . . *full*—invited him to have a wrestling match with him. *Good brothers collar*—seized his brother-king by his collar-bone. *Page 35*—*Prime of life*—the first flush of life, that is, both were fresh young men. *Stately*—majestic-looking. *Well made*—splendidly built. *Agile*—active. *Amazement*—great astonishment. *Found* . . . . *back*—found himself laid on his back, that is, vanquished. *Demand-ed*—claimed, asked as his right. *Interfered*—interposed. *Turn*—bout of wrestling. *Animosities*—unfriendly or rancorous feelings.

*Para 5*—*Formalities*—set forms and ceremonies. *Intercourse*—meetings. *Page*—a boy servant, but a gentleman in rank. In chivalry, first a page, then a squire, and then a knight, the highest in rank. *Merrily*, —in jest or fun. *Responded*—replied. *In the same tone merrily*. *Rich collar*—collar made of gold or velvet and studded with precious stones. *By way of chain*—in place of fetters, to signify that Henry VIII accepted Francis I as his prisoner-of-war. *Warming his shirt*—dispelling the chill from Henry's shirt, before he put it on, in other words, doing the work of a valet. *Doublet*—a little coat; a garment like the present waist coat. *Hose or breeches*—close fitting trousers down to the knees only, resembling modern knickers. *Frolic*—fun. *Lecture*—scolding, serious talking, finding fault. *Took him to*

*task*—taxed, reprovèd. *Sire*—a King's title. *For*—on account of, by reason of. The force concernèd is that of each age. *Ill luck*—woe. *Betide*—betall.

Para 7. *Altogether*—wholly. *The* is here a demonstrative adverb, modifying the adjective more reasonable. *More reasonable*—wiser. Had more reason on his side in what he did, than Fleuranges on his for what he said or thought. *Taste*—inclination, liking. *Assassination*—killing secretly or suddenly some one belonging to a high rank. *Arrogant manners*—insolent manners. *Extraordinary display*—excessively pompous parading. *Constable*—a French military officer of high rank literally it means a count of the royal stables. *Could not help observing*—could not refrain from remarking. *Mindful*—remembering. *Warwick*—the famous king-maker' nobleman of England. *His head . . . . shoulders*—he would be soon beheaded.

Page 36 Para: 8—*Midsummer Day*—21st of June, being the summer solstice. *Apparelled*—dressed. *Silver-damask*—raised work done with silver thread. *Discourteous*—rude. *On his head . . . . leaves*—on his head he wore a wreath made of green silk cut into the shape of vine and hawthorn leaves (Emblems of France and England) in raised work. *Club*—a stout stick like that of Hercules. *Full of pricks*—full of pointed ends done in raised-work upon the silk cloth which covered the club. *Was*—was made of. *Nemean lion's skull*—The gold cloth was so fashioned as to represent Nemean lion's skull—Hercules, the Greek hero, performed 12 labours or hard tasks, the first of which took him to Nemea, a town of Argolis in Greece, to kill the fierce lion which devastated the country—He choked the beast to death, and ever

afterwards went clothed with its skin—Henry now dressed like Hercules with the Nemean lion's skin on (imitated by silk and gold)—*Wrought* . . . *mane*—the mane of the lion was represented by flat bits of gold being hammered and curled into raised-work on the green silk—*Buskins*—a kind of half-boot coming up to the middle of the calf. *In*—wearing. *Worthies*—worthy persons, men of rank and wisdom. *Trapped*—adorned. *Set out*—started. *Fantastic*—grotesque. *Masquers*—people with masks on their faces, dancing or walking in procession, and amusing themselves—The modern amusement corresponding to this is the fancy dress ball. *Like*—similar. *To make a like call*—to pay a similar visit to. *Took no notice of*—would not recognise. *Passed on*—continued their procession. *Exchanged Presents*—gave and took presents. *Presents*—gifts. *Enacted*—represented. *Open sky*—in a field where there were no plants or trees to obstruct the view. *A true midsummer night's dream*—This is the name of a play written by Shakspeare, years after this event in which men and fairies took part. Miss Yonge refers to it backward, and means, all this masquerading procession looked like 'the acting of the drama called the Midsummer night's dream—a fantastic and grotesque affair.

*Para 9. Triumph*—exultant procession. *Hall*—the shortened and familiar name for Henry (VII). *Who* . . . *element*—who was now, most of all, in the sphere of life (amusements) for which he was most suited. *So much people* is old English for so many 'people'. *Honour*—splendour. *Victuals of the court*—eatables supplied by Henry's court. *Conduit*—pipe or pump. Here the word refers to the fountains of wine mentioned in para. 2. *Ran wine*—flowed with wine.



*Vagabonds*—tramps. *That*.....*heaps*—that got drunk, and lay jumbled up together. *So*.....*came*—such a large company of men and women found their way there. *The nobleness*—ladies and gentlemen of rank and title. *Were fain to lie*—were glad to lie down (in hay and straw, rather than miss the sight). *Hay*—dried grass. *Held*.. .....*pleased*—considered themselves very fortunate that they got even hay and straw to lie down on.

PARA. 10.—*These same*—these very. *Memoir*—account of something worth remembering in a small way. *Pause*—stop in the course of my narrative. *To relate*—to give an account of. *Great superfluous expense*—the large amount of money spent extravagantly, and, over and above what one required. *It*—the superfluous expense. *Such*—so great. *Many wore*.....*bucks*—Many of those who came there, wore dresses and garments and ornaments which cost them the entire income they derived from their mills, forests and meadows.

## APPENDIX II.

### 1.—HISTORICAL.

Q.—Write short accounts of the prominent historical persons mentioned in this lesson.

A.—Henry VII. Son of Edmund Tudor. Earl of Richmond, and Margaret Beaufort, was born at Pembroke castle, 21st January 1456. During the civil wars he was an exile in Brittany. In 1485 he crossed over, and landing at Milford Haven, he met Richard III at market Bosworth, defeated him and gained the crown. He married Elizabeth of York after this, and thereby united the contending houses of Lancaster and York. In hi

foreign policy he aimed at peace and alliance with Spain and, to secure this he married Prince Arthur to Catharine of Aragon, Princess of Spain. The besetting sin of Henry VII was avarice. He sent out Cabot to America and was the founder of the colonial empire of England. He died April 12, 1509. His severe economy had for its object the accumulation of a treasure which would render him independent of the House of Commons and in this object, he succeeded so well, that at his death, he left two millions.

Henry VIII. son of the above, was born at Greenwich in 1491. He married six wives, one after another: 1. Catharine of Aragon, his brother's widow, whom he afterwards divorced. 2 Anne Boleyn by whom he had one daughter, Elizabeth, the famous 'maiden queen' of England afterwards. After Anne Boleyn was beheaded for unfaithfulness, he took Jane Seymour, his third wife who became the mother of Edward VI. 4. Anne of Cleves became his fourth wife but when this marriage was annulled, he took Catharine Howard as his fifth wife who was also executed like Elizabeth's mother. His last and sixth wife, Catharine Parr, survived. Hence his name of Bluebeard, for having gone through so many wives. The most important historical fact during his reign was the revolt of England from the ecclesiastical empire of Rome. The marriage with Anne Boleyn was the beginning of it, and in ten years' time after it, the revolt or reformation was completed, and new monarchy under Henry VIII had reached the height of its absolute power. He took the title of the Protector and Supreme Head of the Church and Clergy of England in 1531. A purified Catholicism became the religion of the country, but the Lutherans and Protestants were persecuted as heretics. An attempt

was now made to make the Church a department of state. An English translation of the Bible was placed in all the churches. During the last years of his life, he defeated a Scotch army again at Solway moss in 1542, and two years later he carried the war into France. In his reign Wales was incorporated with England, and Ireland was raised from a lordship to a kingdom. He died in June, 1547.

The historical event of the Field of the Cloth of Gold, described here, took place in 1520 during the early part of his reign, under the following circumstances:—In 1519, on emperor Maximilian's death, Karl V of Spain was elected to the imperial throne of the House of Austria, and the Holy Roman Empire, in preference to Francois or Francis I of France. This brought Karl or Charles V of Austria and Francois or Francis I of France into collision, as rival claimants of the Roman Empire. The King of France tried to retain the friendship of Henry VIII by an interview near Guisnes, and this interview of the two Kings is known in history as the interview at the Field of the Cloth of Gold. Despite these festivities, Henry VIII inclined to Karl.

*Francis or Francois I of France*, was born at Cognac, 12th September 1494. He succeeded to the French crown on the death of Louis XII. Throughout his reign he waged war with Spain, Austria, Italy and England. His reign has been stigmatised in history as dishonourable. He was known in his country as "Father of Literature," and was the Founder of the Royal College in Latin, Greek and Hebrew. He died on 31st March 1547.

*Wolsey, Thomas*, son of a prosperous townsman of Ipswich, was born in March 1571, and from the free-school of his birthplace, he went up to Magdalen College, Oxford, where graduating in his sixteenth year, he gained the nickname of "Boy Bachelor." His rise from this time was quick, till when he was about thirty years old, he was brought to the notice of Henry VII. His great abilities soon raised him high in Henry the Seventh's favour, and after his return from a brilliantly successful embassy to Flanders, he was rewarded with the deanery of Lincoln in 1508. Then came Henry VIII to the throne of England, and Wolsey's advancement under him was equally rapid and wonderful. He became King's almoner, and soon after Henry's chief favourite. All state business was now disposed by Wolsey, and most church preferments were bestowed on him. From a rector to a canon, then a prebend, afterwards French Bishop of Tournay, then bishop of Lincoln, and finally Archbishop of York. Wolsey passed through these posts with credit and success, till in 1515 he was made a cardinal, and soon afterwards succeeded Warham as Chancellor. Three years after this Henry VIII had him appointed as the Pope's legate which formed the Keystone of his proud position. Henry cherished the dream of becoming the Emperor of the Roman Empire, while his Chancellor, Wolsey, indulged in the hope of succeeding to the papal see. Both of them failed to realise their dreams. Wolsey's failure was attended with loss of office, humiliation and disgrace. The famous Cardinal's downfall was brought about in a manner by Anne Boleyn, in the following manner. Henry VIII was anxious to obtain a divorce from his first wife, and marry Anne Boleyn. This double feat

could not be performed without a pope of Henry's choosing, and Wolsey designed that this choice should fall on himself. With a view to bring this about, he tried on the one hand to uphold the papal prerogative, and on the other to hinder the reigning Pope from giving judgment in the case. This could not be kept up long, and when after four years spent in this manner, Karl by the mouth of Clement VII cited the case to Rome, Cardinal Wolsey's doom was sealed. His downfall was quite as quick as his rise. He was deprived of his chancellorship and his legislative authority, and then made to retire as Archbishop of York, but was arrested again and brought towards London. On the way he died of dysentery in 1530. With his enormous wealth he had founded two Colleges (Christ Church and Ipswich), this being about the noblest use he had made of his money. For the rest, he was a bitter religious persecutor, founder of an overwhelming despotism and a priest of immoral life, deserving more censure than pity, more wonder than admiration.

*Charles de Bourbon* was born February 1490, and eclipsed his contemporaries both as a politician and a soldier. At the age of twenty-six, Francis I made him constable of France. In 1575 he gained the brilliant victory of Marignan, and within three weeks became master of Milan and Lombardy. About this time, some domestic cause made him a bitter enemy of Francis I, and he formed an alliance with the Emperor Charles V and Henry VIII against Francis. In the memorable battle of Pavia in 1525, he not only defeated Francis, but took him prisoner. Having resolved to make himself independent in Italy, he appeared with an army in 1527 under the

walls of Rome where in attempting to scale the walls, he was mortally wounded with a musket ball, and died.

*Catharine of Aragon*, born December 1484, was the fourth daughter of Ferdinand and Isabella of Castile and Aragon. She was first married to Arthur, eldest son of Henry VII. and afterwards, in 1509 to Arthur's brother, Henry VIII. She was divorced on the pretext, that marriage with a deceased brother's wife was not lawful. This took place in 1530 and she retired to Hertfordshire and died in 1536. She was the mother of Princess Mary who ascended the throne of England after Edward VI, and is known in history as Bloody Mary.

## 2. GEOGRAPHICAL.

*Arras* is a town of France in the department of Pas-de-Calais. *Calais* is a seaport and fortress, also in the department of Pas-de-Calais, France, 20 miles N. E. of Boulogne, and 120 N. N. W. of Paris. The history of Calais cannot be traced beyond the Middle Ages. Up to the 13th century it was called *Scalas*. About that time it was fortified. Edward III took Calais in 1347, after a siege of eleven months. Calais remained in the possession of England till 1558 when the Duc de Guise captured it, and since then its history has become purely French.

*Guisers* or *Guise* (to be pronounced as *Gheens*) is a town in the department of Aisne, France, on the left bank of the Oise, 13 miles W. N. W. of Veroin. It was formerly strongly fortified, and has a castle built in 1649. This town has been repeatedly besieged in medieval and modern times. In 1443 it was handed over to Charles of

Anjou; afterwards it passed to a branch of the house of Lorraine, who took from it the title of Due de Guise.

*Picardy*, an old province of N. E. France, bounded by the Netherlands, Champagne, Isle-de-France, Normandy, and the English Channel and the Straits of Dover. It included the present department of Somme, with parts of Pas-de-Calais, Oise and Aisne.

### 3. BIOGRAPHICAL.

*Du Bellay*, John, archbishop of Paris, and afterwards, a cardinal. His only book known to fame is an Apology for Francis I, in connection with which he is here called "the French Memoir Writer." He is also the author of "Epigrams" and some other books, less known. He was born in 1492 and died in 1560.

*Sieur de Fleuranges*, Robert, marshal of France, and historian, was born of an ancient family at Sedan in 1491. A fondness for military exercises displayed itself in his earliest years, and at the age of ten he was sent to the court of Louis XII, and placed in charge of the count of Angouleme, afterwards King Francis I. He distinguished himself in various battles, received many wounds, and was Knighted by Francis I in 1515 at Marignano where he contributed powerfully to the victory of the French. In 1525 he was taken prisoner with Francis I at Pavia and sent into confinement in Flanders where he remained for some years, during which he was created Marshal of France, and wrote his History of the Reigns of Louis XII and Francis I. He narrated only what he had seen himself, writing in a simple but vivid style. He was engaged in active service for the last time at the defence

of Peronne in 1536. He died at Longjumeau in December 1537.

*Tonge, Charlotte Mary*, daughter of a Plymouth physician, was born at Otterbourne, Hampshire, in August 1823. Her writings, which reach nearly three figures in number, may be divided into novels, history, biography and miscellaneous works. She earned her popularity by her first and best novel, *The Elcyr of Redclyffe*, in 1853. With the proceeds of this and of another book, *The Daisy Chain*, she fitted out a missionary schooner for Bishop Selwyn, and founded a college at Auckland in New Zealand. Her name is prominently connected with the *Monthly Packet* which she edited with great ability and wisdom. Among her historical writings, which includes stories from English, French, German, Greek and Roman History, must be mentioned her *Cameos from English History*, from which the account of the Field of the Cloth of Gold has been selected by Green. She died towards the end of 1900. Her popularity with Englishmen, especially with young England, is immense, and shows no signs of decay. Perhaps no other writer has exercised such healthy influence upon the young readers of any generation, as Miss Yonge on hers. Her novels are always fresh, vivid and minute in their details, and yet life-like and graphic in their portraiture of characters. She has hardly ever written a story without a definite object in view, and that object has always been the moral beauty of some kind or another, depicted with infinite pains and glowing realism. In matters historical, she displays considerable powers of independent research, and vivid imagination, a fittingly proportionate blending of which with the historical faculty has, among other qualities, been considered a portion of valuable assets in



an historical writer. Her life was in wonderful keeping with her writings. She lived and died in the service of others, especially the young. Although descended from a family whose traditions were evangelical in tone, she was a High Church woman in her ecclesiastical predilections, and laboured in connection with the Missionary Society for the Propagation of the Gospel, in Foreign Parts. Her daily life was methodically divided into teaching the young, writing for them, organising help for mission work and setting apart a definite portion of it for her devotional exercises. Her disposition and temperament were always hopeful, bright and optimistic. She had the courage of her convictions which neither illness nor ill-success nor failure ever daunted or depressed.

#### 4. EXPLANATORY.

Q.—Write a brief summary of the whole piece.

A.—When Henry VII ascended the throne, the civil wars ended for good. His reign is noted for three things: peace to the country, termination of the feudal system and freeing the monarchy from the powers of the barons as well as the Houses of Parliament. Henry VIII sought to acquire power in the continent of Europe under Cardinal Wolsey's guidance. An interview was arranged between Henry VIII and Francis I, to enable both to remain friends, and this took place in the field between Ardres and Guisnes, known in history as the Field of the Cloth of Gold, on account of the splendour and magnificence displayed by both Kings.

Weeks before the meeting took place, preparations were made on a large and very expensive scale. The

avilions erected for Francis and Henry were gorgeous and gay, gold, silk and velvet being used without stint. The effect produced was correspondingly charming and attractive, the only difference being that King Francis's lodgings were not so strong and substantial as King Henry's. Besides, Henry VIII had his quarters plentifully supplied with food and drink for all sight-seers who flocked in large numbers from the surrounding country. Then the heralds drew up the programme and the statesmen arranged the rules and conditions of the interview. They were to the effect that the two Kings could meet in the open field, but neither should receive or return visits, except when calling on the queens. The first day's meeting took place between King Francis and Cardinal Wolsey, Henry's Chancellor, on the one hand, and King Henry and Cardinal Duprat, Francis's Chancellor, on the other. It ended in a mutual agreement on the part of the two kings to marry the son of Francis to the daughter of Henry. Then took place the actual meeting of Francis and Henry, in the midst of great display, followed by a splendid feast. Next came a tournament which lasted for eleven days, the first six days were given to tilting with the lance, the next two-days to fighting with the broadsword on horseback, then two-days more for fighting on foot at the barriers, and the eleventh-day was given to wrestling in which both the kings took part, and Henry was defeated.

Francis was so sick of the formalities that in defiance of all the rules he set out one morning to visit King Henry, and offered himself as his captive or prisoner of war. As all this was in fun, Henry fell in with Francis's humour and accepted him as such. Francis then offered

to act as Henry's valet, and did so. When he returned to his own quarters he got a lecture from his guardian, Cardinal Henranges, for his foolishness, the Cardinal evidently thinking that Francis had run the risk of losing his life, by visiting Henry against the rules of the interview. One Midsummer day, the 21st of June, Francis and Henry got themselves up extra carefully, making elaborate and expensive preparations to visit each others queens. On the way they met only to pass on, each unnoticed by the other. On their return from visiting the queens they met again, this time embracing, exchanging presents and taking leave of each other.

Q.—Explain the following :—(1.) The aim.....kings (page 22) lines 12-15, (2) With his reign.....upon its lines 16-18. (3) his stirring.....abroad (page 32. lines 21-22) (4) They.....Queens (page 32, lines 8-9). (5) Each.....other (page 32. lines 10-11). (6) It.....stability (page 33-34 lines last and first). (7) Armour.....amusements page 34 lines 23-26). (8) Francis.....intercourse (page 35, lines 7-8. (9) Yet when.....shoulders (page 35, lines 29-34). (10.) Who.....element (page 36, lines 22-23). (11.) That for.....heaps (page 22-23. line 28). 12. That both.....pleased (page 22-23, lines 29-31) and 13. It was such.....backs (page 37. lines 1-3).

A.—(1) Henry VII had for his object, not only the giving of peace to England, but also the putting of the King's power so far above the power of the barons, that they could no longer set upon King and put down another as they had done before. (2) At the time that his reign began, the feudal system of England ended on the one hand, and on the other, the fact that the Houses of Lords and Commons were required to meet at long intervals, and on very few occasions during a given number of

years, helped to set free the King from being indirectly under the Parliament. (3) His disposition which sought excitement, induced him to try and secure an authority in Europe, which would be proportionately equal to that he had obtained in England. (4) Francis was at liberty to call on Henry's Queen, and Henry was at liberty to call on Francis's Queen. (5) France was bound to be a pledge in his person to Henry for his own peaceful conduct, and so was Henry to be to Francis for his own harmless behaviour. (6) The balance of excellence which Henry's canvas castle possessed over that of Francis, lay in its being more durable than Francis's pavilion. (7) A coat of mail and its adjuncts had become so heavy and complete in the fifteenth century, that it was not a very easy thing to kill a person with such armour in a real battle, unless one had recourse to guns or pistols; mock-fights were, therefore, recreations in which there was no danger to one's life. (8) Francis was thoroughly disgusted with the forms and ceremonies prescribed for their interview. (9) Still when Henry VIII noticed the haughty bearing and undue pomp of Bourbon, and recollected how Warwick had from a similar beginning developed into a "King-Maker," he could not restrain himself from remarking that if he had such an English subject as the Constable of France, he (that subject) would not be allowed to live long, that is Henry would soon have him beheaded. (10) *Who i.e., Henry, had never before or after* been in circumstances that he engaged so well as these. (11) That got drunk and lay huddled up together. (12) That ladies as well as knights who had come to see the grand display, were glad enough to make their bedding in dry grass and straw, and consider themselves very fortunate at that. (13) The expenditure in excess was so

to act as Henry's valet, and did so. When he returned to his own quarters he got a lecture from his guardian, Cardinal Henranges, for his foolishness, the Cardinal evidently thinking that Francis had run the risk of losing his life, by visiting Henry against the rules of the interview. One Midsummer day, the 21st of June, Francis and Henry got themselves up extra carefully, making elaborate and expensive preparations to visit each others queens. On the way they met only to pass on, each unnoticed by the other. On their return from visiting the queens they met again, this time embracing, exchanging presents and taking leave of each other.

Q.—Explain the following:—(1.) The aim.....kings (page 22) lines 12-15. (2) With his reign.....upon its lines 16-18. (3) his stirring.....abroad (page 32. lines 21-22) (4) They.....Queens (page 32, lines 8-9). (5) Each.....other (page 32. lines 10-11). (6) It.....stability (page 33-34 lines last and first). (7) Armour.....amusements page, 34 lines 23-26): (8) Francis.....intercourse (page 35, lines 7-8. (9) Yet when.....shoulders (page 35, lines 29-34). (10.) Who.....element (page 36, lines 22-23). (11.) That for.....heaps (page 22-23. line 28). 12. That both.....pleased (page 22-23, lines 29-31) and 13. It was such.....backs (page 37, lines 1-3).

A.—(1) Henry VII had for his object, not only the giving of peace to England, but also the putting of the King's power so far above the power of the barons, that they could no longer set upon King and put down another as they had done before. (2) At the time that his reign began, the feudal system of England ended on the one hand, and on the other, the fact that the Houses of Lords and Commons were required to meet at long intervals, and on very few occasions during a given number of

years, helped to set free the King from being indirectly under the Parliament. (3) His disposition which sought excitement, induced him to try and secure an authority in Europe, which would be proportionately equal to that he had obtained in England. (4) Francis was at liberty to call on Henry's Queen, and Henry was at liberty to call on Francis's Queen. (5) France was bound to be a pledge in his person to Henry for his own peaceful conduct, and so was Henry to be to Francis for his own harmless behaviour. (6) The balance of excellence which Henry's canvas castle possessed over that of Francis, lay in its being more durable than Francis's pavilion. (7) A coat of mail and its adjuncts had become so heavy and complete in the fifteenth century, that it was not a very easy thing to kill a person with such armour in a real battle, unless one had recourse to guns or pistols; mock-fights were, therefore, recreations in which there was no danger to one's life. (8) Francis was thoroughly disgusted with the forms and ceremonies prescribed for their interview. (9) Still when Henry VIII noticed the haughty bearing and undue pomp of Bourbon, and recollected how Warwick had from a similar beginning developed into a "King-Maker," he could not restrain himself from remarking that if he had such an English subject as the Constable of France, he (that subject) would not be allowed to live long, that is Henry would soon have him beheaded. (10) Who *i.e.*, Henry, had never before or after been in circumstances that he engaged so well as these. (11) That got drunk and lay huddled up together. (12) That ladies as well as knights who had come to see the grand display, were glad enough to make their bedding in dry grass and straw, and consider themselves very fortunate at that. (13) The expenditure in excess was so

great that many people went through the annual income they derived from their mills, forests and pasture lands, in providing themselves with wearables fitting for the occasions.

Q — Write short explanatory notes on the following expression :—

- (i) The precautions and etiquettes of the meeting.
- (ii) Unless on principles of exchange.
- (iii) Chiefly about the hangings.
- (iv) Nominally with a view to this hypothetical marriage.
- (v) To try a fall.
- (vi) A game that might leave animosities.
- (vii) Warming his shirt, spreading out his hose and trussing his points.
- (viii) Green damask cut into vine and hawthorn leaves.
- (ix) Green damask full of pricks.
- (x) Wrought and frizzed with flat gold of damask.
- (xi) A fantastic chariot.

A.—(i) The interests to be guarded against in the interview, and the ceremonies to be observed together with the kinds of dress and adornments to be worn on the occasion.

(ii) Excepting when they observed the rule of paying simultaneous visits to each other's camp.

(iii) Most of all were they employed in preparing lace curtains and silk tapestries.

(iv) It was a payment in name only for the future fulfilment of the condition that Henry's daughter was to marry the son of Francis (See Notes).

- (vi) To engage in a single wrestling match.
- (vii) A sport that might leave angry feelings rankling in the heart of the vanquished.
- (viii) Airing his shirt to take away the chill from it, smoothing out the creases from his knickers and laying them out ready for use, and to fasten the knots between the knickers and the waistcoat.
- (ix) Green silk with a pattern on it having pieces in the shape of vine and hawthorn leaves cut off from it.
- (x) Green figured silk with raised work on it resembling spikes.
- (xi) Plates of figured gold curled and crinkled, and then interwoven into the cloth of gold (of which the Nemean lion's skull was made) to make to look like the lion's mane.
- (xii) A gaudy and grotesque-looking car.

## 5. GRAMMATICAL.

Q.—Give the necessary parsing of the following words :—

Page 32.—*To give* (line 13), *high* (line 14), *stirring* (line 20), *to seek* (line 21), *abroad* (line 22), *Wolsey* (line 23), *as* (line 28), *to be* (line 30).

Page 33.—*Fitting* (line 3), *arranging* (5), *neither* (7), *to confess* (18), *chiefly* (22), *motto* (25), *one* (26), *Cui.....* *præest* (28), *to resemble* (line 30), *inside* (30), *all* (31).  
 page 34.—*to secure* (line 8), *this* (18), *himself and steed* (lines 11 and 12), *as* (12), *arm-in-arm* (15), *hawthorn and raspberry* (line 17 and 18), *to admire* (22), *to be killed* (25), *barring* (25), *page 35 game* (line 5), *early* (8), *as* (11), *throwing* (12), *to help to dress* (line 14), *namely*



(15), to dress (18), having had (18), home, again, (line 19), to task, (20), for (22), betide (23), my own (24), altogether (25) the 25), imprisoning (26), Charles de Bourbon (29), as that (31), observing, mindful (30); page 36.—day (line 1), Midsummerday (2), like Hercules (3), that (3), garland (15), club (6), buskins (9), each other (17), dream (21), ran (line 26), fain to lie (30).

A.—Page 32—*To give*—present of the Gerundial infinitive denoting purpose, used adverbially as a subjective complement of the verb “*was*” before it. *High*—adj. of quality in the positive degree used predicatively as obj. complement of the verb to raise, and qualifying “*power*.” *Stirring*—gerund used as an adj. qualifying “*temper*.” *To seek*—present of the simple inf., obj. compl. of “*led*.” *Abroad*—adv. modifying “*to seek*,” *Wolsey*—case in apposition with “*minister*,” “*Cardinal*” being a noun, here used as an adj. qualifying “*Wolsey*.” *As*—prep. governing “*the Field*” in the obj. case. *To be*—present of the gerundial inf. denoting purpose, used adverbially as subj. compl. of “*was* ;” it is a verb of incomplete predication, having “*between..... Guisnes*” for its subj. complement.

Page 33—*Fitting*—pres. imperf. gerund, trans. having for its object “*themselves*,” and governed by the prep. “*in*” in the objective case. *Arranging*—pres. impref. trans. participle, governing “*precautions*” and “*etiquettes*” in the obj. case predicating “*councillors*” and “*heralds*.” *Neither*—substantive in the sing. nom. case, subj. to the verb. “*might trust*.” *To confess*—pres. of the simple or noun inf. subj. compl. of “*is obliged*.” *Chiefly*—adv. modifying the prep. phrase “*about the hangings*.” *Motto*—noun in the obj. case

governed by the preposition "with" before "several &c." *One*—dem. pron. same case as "*Motto*." "*Cui..... praeest*"—noun clause in apposition with "*that*" after "*than*"; similarly the noun clause "*Failes..... couldra*" is in apposition with "*molto*"—*To resemble*—pres: of the gerundial inf. denoting purpose, used adverbially to modify the part: "*painter*." *Inside*—substantive, either case absolute (if "*hung*" is taken as a participle) or nom: case subj. to the verb (was) hung.' *All*—indef: numeral pronoun, taken collectively, case similar to "*inside*."

Page 34—*To secure*—pres. of the gerund: inf. denoting purpose, used adverbially to modify "*to be paid*." *This*—dem. pron. case absolute. *Himself* reflexive form of the personal pronoun used emphatically; *steed*—com. noun in the mas. gender; both words ("*himself*" and "*steed*") nominative absolute. *As*—rel. pronoun, having for its antecedent "*cloth*," nom. case subject to the verb "*could be put*." *Arm-in-arm*—an adv. phrase. if taken together as a singular expression, modifg. "*walked*"; if taken separately as three words, without the hyphens, then the first "*arm*" is case absolute—"arm (being) *in arm*." *Hawthorn* and *raspberry*—both nouns, in apposition with "*trees*." *To admire*—pres. of the Ger. inf. denoting purpose, used adverbially to modify the verb "*sat*". *To be killed*—pres. of the simple infinitive, case in apposition with "*it*" going before. *Barring*—this can be parsed in three ways, all correct:—(1) participial preposition, governing "*fire-arms*" in the objective case; or (2) transitive participle used absolutely, governing "*fire-arms*" in the objective case; or again (3) "*fire-arm*" case absolute, joined to the participle "*barring*" removed after it, e.g., *fire-arms barring*."

Page 35. — *Game*—noun, objective complement of the factitive trans. participle "*thinking*." *Early*—adv. modifg. the adverbial expression "*one morning*." *As* prep. governing captive in the obj. case.—*Throwing*—pres. imperf. trans. gerund, (governing "*collar*" in the obj. case) in the obj. case, governed by the prep. "*by*." *To help*—pres. of the simple inf. in the obj. case, governed by the transitive verb "*undertook*." *To dress*—same as "*to help*," objective complement of "*to help*." *Having had*—pres. perf. gerund in the obj. case, governed by the prep. "*after*." *Home*—noun used as an adv. *Again*—adv. both words modifg. "*rode*". *To (task)*—prep. governing the noun "*task*" in the obj. case. *For*—prep. governing the noun clause after it ("*what.....done*".) *Belide*—verb defective, active, transitive, (having "*those*" for its object), subjunctive mood, denoting wish, present tense, agreeing with subject "*ill-luck*" in number and person. *My own*—reflexive form of the personal pronoun in the possessive case, possessing the noun "*through*" understood after it; or parse it as reflexive form of the possessive adjective, used predicatively, qualifying the noun "*thought*" before it. *Although*—adv. modifg. the adj. phrase "*more reasonable*." *The*—demonstrative adv. modifying *more* "*reasonable*." *Imprisoning*—pres. imperf. gerund in the obj. case, governed by the prep. "*of*". *Charles de Bourbon*=Charles of Bourbon—the first prop. noun is in apposition with "*constable*." *Mindful*—adj. used predicatively, qualifying the second *he* in the sentence [= "he (being) mindful of . . . had been, could not help observing."] *Observing*—pres. impf gerund, object of "*could not help*."

*Page 36.*—*Day*—noun, adverbial object of time. *Midsummer*—noun used as an adj., qualifying "*day*" which is in apposition with "*day*" before it. *Like*—either a prep. governing "*Hercules*", or a predicative adj., qualifying "*himself*" or "*King Henry*," in which case the prep. *to* understood after it governs "*Hercules*" in the obj. case. *That*—a demonstrative pronoun in form, but really a relative pronoun=which having for its antecedent the whole clause ("*King . . . Hercules*") before it. The full stop should then be removed, and only a comma put in its place. *Garland* and *Club* are both in the obj. cases, governed by the transitive verb "*had*". *Buskins*—parsing same as "*garland*" and "*club*" are both in the obj. cases, governed by the transitive verb "*had*." *Buskins*—parsing same as "*garland*" and "*club*." *Each other*—the two words must be parsed separately. *Each*—distributive pronoun, case in apposition with "*parties*," and *other*—definite demonstrative pronoun (with *the* understood before it) object of the prep. "*of*." *Dream*—case in apposition with "*scene*." *Ran*—Verb intransitive used transitively and causatively (=caused to run), governing "*wine*" in the obj. case. *Fain*—adj. used predicatively, qualifying "*knights*" and "*ladies*". *To lie*—pres. of the gerund: infinitive, denoting purpose, used adverbially to modify the adj. "*fain*."

Q.—Give the meaning or force of the important prepositions employed in this piece.

A.—*Page 52.*—With (line 11 and 15) denotes *time simultaneous*. *Of* (12) denotes *possession* with an *objective force*. *Of* (14) carries an *attributive force*. *To* (16 and 19) denotes *motion towards same state or condi-*

tion. *Under* (22) denotes *subjection*. *For* (24) denotes *purpose*. *Over* (24) denotes *authority*. *In* (27) means *state or manner*. *Of* (28) and *of* (29) both denote *material* or the first denotes *material* and the second has an *adjectival* force. *Of* (31) carries a *partitive* force.

Page 33.—*On* (8) *basis or dependence*. *For* (11) denotes *exchange*. *Of* (16) denotes *material*. *Of* (17) means *source*. *For* (22) *duration in time or period*. *With* (27) denotes *accompaniment*. *To* (29) means *proximity*. *With* (30) denotes *instrument or means*.

Page 34.—*With* (1) is *union in place or state*. *With* (4) means *company*. *With* (7) denotes *purpose*. *To* (7) denotes *direction*. *To* (19) denotes *object*. *By* (24) means *proximity*.

Page 35.—*To* (3) denotes *effect*. *Of* (7) has the meaning of *reference*. *By way of* (13) denotes *end or purpose*. *For* (22) denotes *cause of* (32) originally carrying a *partitive* force, here denotes *reference on* (33) denotes *rest and point of space*.

Page 36.—*Of* (1) denotes *partition*. *Of* (3) means *material*; some prefer to call it an *adjectival* force. *For* (9) denotes *substitution*. *Upon* (16) means *direction*. *Of* (17) denotes *reference*. *During* (22) denotes *period of time*. In "people of Picardy" and "King of England," *of* has a *partitive* force. *In* (18) denotes *state or condition*. So does the other *in* (line 30). *Of* (32) means *concerning*.

Q.—Point out and mention, with reasons, all the Figures of Speech employed in this lesson.

A.—Point out and mention, with reasons, all the Figures of Speech employed in this lesson.

A.—Page 32.—*Crown* for king (line 14) is *Metonymy*.

Page 35.—The last three lines containing an instance of *Periphrasis* or *circumlocution*, expressing in a round about way that Henry VIII would have Charles de Bourbon beheaded, if the latter were an English subject.

Page 36.—Lines 1—9 contain two examples (Hercules and the Nemean lion) of *allusion*.

Page 36.—Line 26 contains the Figure of Speech called *Hypallage*, as it interchanges the cases of words used there, namely "*the conduit . . . run wine,*" instead of the *wine ran in the conduit* &c.

Page 37.—Lines 2 and 3 are instances of *Metonymy* where the *cause* ("mills," "forests" &c) is substituted for the *effect* (the income from the mills &c.)

Q.—From all the Direct Forms of Narration occurring in the piece, into the Indirect Forms of speech.

A.—1. Page 35 lines 21—23 —Sieur de Fleuranges told the King that he (S. de F.) was glad to see him (King Frances) back, but he (S. de F.) asked permission to tell him his master, that he (Francis I) had been a fool for what he had done, and wished that ill luck might betide those who had advised him to it.

2. Page 35 line 24.—The King told him in reply that, that had been no one—that the thought had been his own.

3. Page 36 para. 2.—Hall, who was never more in his element, observed that, during that triumph, so much people of Picardy and West Flanders had drawn to Guisnes to see the King of England, and his honour, to whom the victuals of the court had been in plenty; that conduit of the gate had run wine always,—that there had been . . . . .beggars, that for drunkenness had lain in routs and heaps. That so great resort had come

thither, that . . . ladies that had come to see the nobleness had been fain to lie in hay and straw, and had held them thereof highly pleased.

4. Pages 36 and 37. Para. 3.—The French memoir writer, Due Bellay said that he would not pause . . . expense, for it could not be estimated. It had been such that many had worn their . . . backs.

Q.—Furnish tabulary the general analysis of the following sentences :—

1. Page 32—"Both powers . . . as the Field of Cloth of Gold."

2. Page 33.—"The cords were . . . , trop plus belle."

3. Page 34.—"This settled . . . the valley of Ardres."

4. Pages 34 and 35.—"On the last day . . . to try a fall."

5. Page 35.—"Francois was . . . by way of chain."

6. Page 36.—"So great was . . . thereof highly pleased."

7. Page 34.—"On the first day . . . should be married."

The clause.	Its nature and its syntax.
<p><b>1</b></p> <p>A.—Both . . . . friendship ...</p> <p>B.—And . . . . splendour ...</p> <p>C.—That the field was known as . . . .  . . . . of Gold.</p> <p>D.—Where they met ...</p>	<p>Principal clause.</p> <p>Same as A. in cumulative co-ordination with it.</p> <p>Adv. clause of effect to B, modifying "so."</p> <p>Adj. clause to C, qualifying "field."</p>
<p><b>2</b></p> <p>A.—The cords . . . . of cyprus.</p> <p>B.—But . . . . to confess ...</p> <p>C.—That . . . . belle ...</p>	<p>Principal clause.</p> <p>Same as A. in adversative co-ordination with it.</p> <p>Noun clause to B, object of "to confess."</p>



The clause.	Its nature and its syntax.
<b>3</b>	
A.—This settled . . . . silver ...	Principal clause.
B.—As could . . . . . them ...	Adj. clause to A. qualifying "cloth."
C.—And . . . . . Address ...	Same as A, in contracted cumulative co-ordination with it.
<p style="text-align: center;">NOTE.—In detailed analysis, the absolute phrases, "This settled" and "himself . . . . silver" in clause A, should go into the last column, as such phrases, when expanded, become adverb clauses.</p>	
<b>4</b>	
A.—On . . . . . barriers ...	Principal clause.
B.—And Henry put his hand . . . collar.	Same as A, in cumulative co-ordination with it.
C.—And challenged . . . . . fall ...	Same as B, in contracted cumulative co-ordination with it.

The clause.	Its nature and its syntax.
<i>24—concluded.)</i>	
D.—Who . . . sport ...	Adj. clause to B, qualifying <i>Henry</i> ."
E.—And never . . . . equal ...	Same as D, in contracted cumulative co-ordination with it.
<b>5</b>	
A —François . . . . intercourse	Principal clause.
B —And . . . . Gentlemen ...	Same as A, in contracted cumulative co-ordination with it.
C — (And) mounted . . . . horse	Same as B, in contracted cumulative co-ordination with it.
D —And rode . . . . castle ...	Same as C, in contracted cumulative co-ordination with it.
E.—Where . . . . in bed ...	Adj clause to D. qualifying " <i>castle</i> ."

The clause.	Its kind and its syntax.
<p><b>5—(concluded).</b></p> <p>F.—And merrily . . . . captive,</p> <p>G.—To which Henry . . . . by way of chain.</p>	<p>Same as D, in contracted cumulative co-ordination with it.</p> <p>Adjective clause to F, qualifying the whole clause.</p>
<p><b>6</b></p> <p>A.—So . . . . came . . .</p> <p>B.—That . . . ladies were fain to lie in hay and straw.</p> <p>C.—And . . . . pleased . . .</p> <p>D.—That . . . . nobleness . . .</p>	<p>Principal clause.</p> <p>Adverbial clause of effect to A, modifying "so."</p> <p>Same as B, in contracted cumulative co-ordination with it.</p> <p>Adjective clause to B, qualifying "Knights and ladies."</p>

The clause.	Its kind and its syntax.
Z	
A.—On . . . . Francois . . .	Principal clause—
B.—(And) Duprat (had a conference, with Henry.	Same as A, in contracted cumulative co-ordination with it.
C.—The upshot . . . . was . . .	Adjective clause to A and B, qualifying "conference."
D.—That . . . . married . . .	Noun clause to C, subjective complement of "was."

NOTE.—All the seven are mixed sentences: Nos. 1 and 7 contain two principal and two subordinate clauses each. Nos. 2 and 3 contain two principal clauses and one subordinate clause each. No. 4 has 3 Principal and 2 subordinate clauses. No. 5 contains 5 Principal and 2 subordinate clauses. And No. 6 has 1 Principal clause and 3 subordinate clauses. On account of its 1 principal clause, some grammarians call it a Complex Sentence.

## 6:—GENERAL AND MISCELLANEOUS.

Q.—Write short technical notes on the following expressions :—

1. *The feudal character of England.* (2) *Hostage.* (3) *Arbitration.* (4) *The nine worthies.* (5) *Triumph.*

A.—(1) *The feudal character (or system) of England* is or rather was a form of Government anciently subsisting in European countries, according to which a victorious leader allotted considerable portions of land, called *feuda*, *fiefs*, or *feuds*, to his principal officers, who in their turn divided their possessions among their inferiors; and the conditions upon which these rewards were given, was that of faithful military service both at home and abroad. To this they engaged themselves by an oath of fealty and if they broke this the lands were to return to their original possessors—

2. *Hostage* is a person given up to an enemy or rival as a security for the performance of the articles of a treaty on the performance of which the person was to be released and sent back.

3. *Arbitration* (or *arbitrement*) is a power given by two or more contending parties to some person or persons to determine the dispute between them, according to the usages of the law and his or their discretion.

4. *The nine worthies.*—There are simply “nine worthies,” and also “nine worthies of London.” As the latter count among them some who flourished after Henry VIII (Sir Thomas White for example in 1553), the former is to be taken as the “worthies” mentioned in the text, and they were: Joshua, David, and Judas Maccabacus;

Hector, Alexander and Julius Caesar; Arthur, Charlemagne, and Godfrey of Bouillon.

5. *Triumph*—In Roman antiquity, a public and solemn honour conferred by the Romans on a victorious general, by allowing him a magnificent procession through the city of Rome. The triumph was of two kinds, the greater and the less, the latter of which was called an *ovation*.

Q.—Clear the allusions contained in *St. Michael, Bacchus and Hercules with the Nemean lion's skull*.

A.—*St. Michael*, in Christian art, is depicted as a beautiful young man with severe countenance, winged, and clad either in white or armour, bearing a lance and shield, with which he combats a dragon. In the final judgment he is represented with scales, weighing the souls of men. In the Bible Michael is an archangel, who contends with Satan over the dead body of Moses.

*Bacchus*—In Roman mythology he is the god of wine. He is represented as a beautiful youth with black eyes, golden locks flowing with curls about his shoulders, filleted with ivy. In peace his robe was purple, in war he was covered with a panther's skin. The famous statue of Bacchus in the palace of Borghese is represented with a bunch of grapes in his hand and a panther at his feet.

*Hercules*.—A Grecian hero—carrying a huge club and possessed of the utmost amount of physical strength and vigour that the human frame is capable of. The Pythian told him if he would serve Eurystheus for twelve years, he should become immortal; accordingly he bound himself to the Argive king who imposed upon him twelve tasks or labours of great difficulty and danger. For the Nemean lion, consult the Notes.

Q.—Comment upon the expressions "*home*" and "*abroad*."

A.—In the mouth of an Englishman, *home* means England, and *abroad* means, out of England, i.e., the continent of Europe or America or India. In the mouth of an Indian, the word, as used by an Englishman, sounds ridiculous, though many use without knowing it.

Q.—Distinguish between a *statesman* and a *politician*.

A.—A *statesman* is one who is versed in the *arts* of Government, and employed in connection with the administration of the affairs of Government. A *politician* is a man who is versed in politics or the *science* of Government. All statesmen are, therefore, politicians, though all politicians are not necessarily statesmen.

Q.—What is the difference between *thither* and *there*?

A.—In old English, *thither*, like *hither*, was used after verbs of motion, and *there*, like *here*, after verbs of rest; as, come hither or go thither. Stand here or lie there. In modern English there is no such difference, except that hither and thither are used in poetry, and here and there in prose.

Q.—What is the origin of the word *damask*?

A.—Originally it meant a kind of cloth with raised figures woven on it, and made in *Damascus*. Now it means only such cloth made anywhere.

Q.—Distinguish *killing*, *slaying*, *murder* and *assassination* from one another.

A.—*Killing* is the general term for taking away life (of men or lower animals), *slaying* is *killing* in battle,

*to murder is to kill with open violence and injustice : to assassinate is to murder by surprise or by means of lying in wait.*

Q.—What is the exact meaning of *assistance*, and how does it differ from *helping*, *aiding*, *succouring* *relieving*.

A.—To *assist* literally means to place one's self by another so as to give him one's strength. It implies producing a positive good or removing an evil. So do the words *helping* and *aiding*. *Succouring* and *relieving* mean only removing an evil. We *help* a person to prosecute his work, or *help* him out of a difficulty, we *assist* in order to forward a scheme, or we *assist* a person in the time of his embarrassment, we *aid* a person to make his escape. We *succour* a person in danger and we *relieve* him in time of distress.

## 7.—GLOSSARY.

<i>Arbitration</i> —decision by mutual consent.	<i>Buskins</i> —half boots.
<i>Advantage</i> —excellence	<i>Corresponding</i> —proportionate.
<i>Amusements</i> —entertainments.	<i>Chronicler</i> —relater.
<i>Animosities</i> —bitter feelings.	<i>Confess</i> —own, acknowledge.
<i>Assassination</i> —secret murder	<i>Conference</i> —consulting together.
<i>Assemblage</i> —gathering, meeting.	<i>Cumbrous</i> —heavy, burdensome.
<i>Accession</i> —succession.	<i>Collar</i> —neck-bone
<i>Barriug</i> —excepting.	<i>Challenge</i> —invited to wrestle
<i>Barriers</i> —boundaries.	<i>Display</i> —show, parade.
<i>Breeches</i> —trousers down to the knees.	<i>Discourteous</i> —rude.



- Drunkenness*—state of intoxication.  
*Etiquettes*—Decorous, ceremonies.  
*Element*—a greeable surrounding.  
*Estimated*—reckoned, calculated.  
*Figure*—solid image.  
*Framework*—structure.  
*Formalities*—forms and ceremonies.  
*Farewell*—goodbye.  
*Galleries*—passages, corridors.  
*Gorgeous*—gay and splendid.  
*Hostage*—security (in war).  
*High*—strong.  
*Hypothetical*—conditional.  
*Hawthorn*—quickset.  
*Influence*—power.  
*Interviews*—meetings.  
*Invitations*—bidding to entertain.  
*Intercourse*—communication.  
*Jousting*—a combat with spears.  
*Liss*—rings, fighting ground.  
*Labelled*—ticketed, billeted.  
*Magnificent*—grand.  
*Motto*—badge, cognizance.  
*Manners*—bearing.  
*Midsummerday*—21st June.
- Memoir*—a short account.  
*Mills*—a grinding machine.  
*Meadows*—pasture lands.  
*Masquers*—men wearing masks.  
*Nobleness*—magnificence, grandeur.  
*Observing*—remarking.  
*Pavilions*—a grand tent.  
*Precautions*—steps taken beforehand to guard.  
*Principles*—governing rules.  
*Prime*—youth, first stage.  
*Presents*—gifts.  
*Responded*—gave a corresponding reply.  
*Rendering*—making.  
*Routs*—huddled up masses.  
*Stirring*—exciting, full of excitement.  
*Supremacy*—mastery.  
*Splendour*—magnificence.  
*Sustained*—supported.  
*Subordinate*—dependent, smaller.  
*Stability*—firmness, strength.  
*Setled*—arranged.  
*Superfluous*—excessive.  
*Secure*—ensure, gain.  
*Steed*—war-horse.  
*Tournament*—a tilting match.  
*Tilting*—jousting.

*Trussing*—fastening and tightening.

*Vied*—contended, competed.

*Visited*—called on, paid a visit.

*Vagabonds*—loafers.

## ADDITIONAL

*Agile*—active.

*Arranging*—settling.

*Adhere*—stick, attached.

*Arras*—heavy silk curtains, tapestries.

*Arrogant*—haughty.

*Armour*—coat of mail.

*Apparelled*—dressed.

*Barons*—a titled landholder

*Broad sword*—a sword with a broad blade.

*Betide*—befall.

*Chapel*—a private place of worship (church).

*Conduit*—a pipe or tube.

*Crimson*—deep red.

*Captive*—prisoner of war.

*Doublet*—a waistcoat.

*Damask*—a figured cloth.

*Entwined*—twisted round.

*Extraordinary*—unc o m - mon, very great.

*Feudal*—pertaining t o fiefs.

*Waging*—carrying o n , engaged in.

*Warming*—airing.

*Worthies*—worthy men, notables.

*Waggoners*—carters.

## GLOSSARY.

*Frisze l*—curled and crisped

*Fantastic*—odd-look i n g , grotesque.

*Incessantly*—continually.

*Lecture*—scolding.

*Nominally*—in name only, ostensibly.

*Politer*—n, or, courteous.

*Prevails*—proves victorious, conquers.

*Perfection*—completest or faultless state.

*Restraints*—checks, limitations.

*Resort*—visitors.

*Serd-pearls*—small pearls.

*Triumph*—a grand procession.

*Trapped*—adorned, covered.

*Upshot*—outcome, result.

*Victuals*—provisions, food for men.

*Wrought*—skilfully worked.

## THE TRANSLATION OF THE BIBLE.

*Introduction.*—*Translation*—rendering in to English  
*Bible*—the holy book of religion, the inspired book in

which Christians believe. Literally it means 'the book (of books),' i.e., the best book. It consists of the old Testament, written in Hebrew, and the New Testament in Greek. The former contains 39, and the latter 27 parts or books. *While*—during the time that. *Thus*—as mentioned in the Field of Cloth of Gold. *Dreaming, &c.*,—building castles in the air, that is, indulging in the hope that he will wage war, conquer and establish his authority in Europe. *The world*—the civilised world of Europe. *Was being stirred*—was in the act of being shaken or excited. *First movements*—the initial motion or steps. *Religious change*—change touching religion. *Reformation*—forming anew by a purifying process which freed the christian religion from all the errors and abuses that had crept into it in course of time; a rearrangement of religious beliefs in order to improve them. *With* here denotes origin. *Won*—gained. *Athence*—allegiance, fidelity. *Pope*—the pontiff of Rome, and successor of St. Peter. Before the Reformation he was the highest authority in Europe, in matters secular no less than in matters religious. Pope is the title. Leo X was the Pope in Luther's time. *It*—the movement known as the Reformation. *Ground*—soil, i.e., the country of England. *Prepared*—made ready to receive. *Previous efforts*—prior exertions. (Note.—For an account of all Proper Names, see Appendix at the end.)

PAGE 42, PARA. 1.—*As . . . movement*—as an impulse which roused society and the Government of the country. *Had ceased to exist*—was dead. *Little*—almost nothing. *Remained*—was left over. *Of* would then mean *from* to suit the construction given here. *Directly religious impulse*—the downright impetus given in the

direction of religion. *Beyond*—except. *Vague*—indefinite. *Restlessness and discontent*—feeling of agitation and dissatisfaction. *System of the church*—the method of worship and other religious observances followed by the Church. *Fitsful*—uncertain, spasmodic, irregular. *Life*—vitality, existence. *Prosecutions*—suits filed in law-courts. *Lie scattered*—recorded here and there. *Failed . . . it*—were not able to deprive it altogether of life. *Prosecutions . . . to kill it*—the records of cases filed in the court against the Lollards which were found entered here and there in a diary or note book kept by the bishops showed that they had not succeeded in putting them down, that is, although the Lollards had been prosecuted from time to time, they were not put out of existence altogether. *See*—a historic present, meaning, we have found accounts. *Group*—knots, or a small number of people among the Lollards. *Meeting*—assembling. *Here and there*—occasionally and in different places. *In*—out of; this use of *in* is now obsolete. *A great book of heresy*—a translation of the Bible used by the heretical sect called the Lollards. *Of* here has an adjectival force. *Heresy*—teaching against any commonly received doctrines of a religion (here Christianity); heterodoxy. (Note.—Reading the Bible, as translated into English or any other language, was in those days forbidden, and considered a great sin. Those who held different views were called *heretics* and their acts or teaching, *heresy*. The word means *to cut away and separate*). *Night*.—The Lollards were afraid to read the English translation of the Bible by day, lest they should be prosecuted; hence they used to meet together at night in some secret place and read it. *Evangelists*—literally messenger of good news about Christ; the writers of the four gospels, namely, Matthew, Mark, Luke

and John ; here it means their gospels. *Transcripts*—hand written copies. *Tracts*—small pamphlets containing Wyclif's translation of parts of the Bible. *Smouldering embers*—coals of fire stifled and smothered. A metaphor, meaning Wyclif's so-called heretical teaching kept down by persecution. *But*—only. *Breath*—a slight breeze. *To fan . . . . flume*—to stir them up into a blaze ; meaning, what Wyclif had taught regarding the Reformation, especially about reading the Bible in English, was not wholly forgotten, it required only a fresh impetus to revive it. *Breath*—here, impetus, a helping hand. *When Bosworth . . . . Tudors*—when the victory gained in the battle of Bosworth brought England back under the Tudor Kings. *One thought*—a single thought. *Perceived by experience*—found out by what he saw himself. *That* is unnecessary in modern English. *Establish*—strengthen and confirm. *Lay people*—the laity, i.e., those who were not clergymen, and therefore did not know Hebrew, Greek and Latin. *To establish . . . . truth*—to make the laity orthodox. *Except* is now not used in such a place ; the modern English word is *unless*. *Plainly*—clearly and simply. *Laid*—placed. *If . . . . life*—if God prolongs my life. *Learned controversialist*—a scholar and disputer who writes and discusses learned subjects. *Ere*—before. *A boy . . . . plough*—a ploughboy, an illiterate fellow. *Shall* denotes certain promise. *Scripture*—the Bible. *Thou*—was a common form of address then and meant what *you*, mean now. *Before . . . . fact*—before he realised his hope. *Drawn*—brought out by force, as it were. *Retirement*—place, where he had withdrawn from active life. *Protest*—a solemn declaration of opinion against some act ; a formal disclaimer

PAGE 43.—*Alderman*—a magistrate of a town, next in rank to a Mayor, corresponding to an honorary or bench magistrate in India. *Solden meat*—stale half boiled meat. By . . . *will*—by choice, voluntarily, of his accord. *But*—only. *Small single beer*—a kind of weak and inferior ale prepared from one substance. *If . . . . hold*—if his object was going to last, or was to be maintained. *At the last*—old English for *at last*—*Not only . . . . in all England*—not only would the Bishop of London stop Tyndale from translating the Bible into English, but that there was no place in the whole of England where he could do this work unmolested.

PARA. 2—*Soon . . . . way*—soon moved to. *Refuge*—shelter from persecution (for translating the Bible) *Sacred . . . . Reformation*—city dedicated to or set apart for the work of the Reformation. *Flocking*—coming in crowds. *Enthusiasm*, zeal. *Student . . . crusades*—Students from England, France and other countries were coming in large numbers to Wittenberg, with as much zeal for the Reformation as princes and peasants collected in the 11th, 12th and 13th centuries to join the Holy War against the Saracens. *Contemporary*—a writer who lived at that time *Clasped hands* joined palms. *Heretofor*—up to now. *The light . . . . truth*—a metaphorical expression meaning gospel truth issuing light and dispelling the darkness of ignorance about the Bible. *For from Wittenberg . . . . earth*—as the light of christianity had originally issued from Jerusalem and spread to the extreme limits of the earth, so the knowledge of the contents of the Bible now issued from Wittenberg and spread all over Europe. *Jerusalem*—where Christ was crucified, and from where the Apostles began preaching christianity. *Fire*—fired Tyndale with fervent

zeal. *To face*—to meet, encounter. *Exile*—banishment from his mother-land. *Bitter* . . . . *friends*—great grief caused by being away from friends. *hard* . . . . *fightings*—difficult and severe struggles. *He* . . . . *himself*—which he had imposed upon himself. *The work* of translating the Bible in English, *Version*—rendering. translation. *Completed*—finished. *Means*—money. *Furnished*—supplied. *Sheets*—manuscripts of the translation. *Fly*—run away *Luthern tendencies*—inclination towards Luther's teaching. *A city* . . . . *refuge*—Worms was a city whose inhabitants were favourably inclined towards the Protestant religion preached by Luther and it was, therefore, a less dangerous place to take shelter in, than Wittenberg. *English shores*—England, shores of England—more strictly speaking to the counties situated along the shores of England, that is sea-side countries.

PARA 3.—*Keenly*—sharply, acutely. *Opposed*—against. *Which* . . . . *on*—which he considered, *At* . . . . *Luther*—because Luther eagerly desired it and set an example towards it by translating the Bible in German, his own mother-tongue. *Men of*—men who followed and identified themselves with. Of here carries partitive force having a meaning of reference.

PAGE 44 — *It*—the English translation of the Bible. *Hoped for*—expected, looked for. *Welcome*—kind reception. *Estranged*—alienated. *Lutheran origin*—having originated from Luther. *And even* . . . . *origin*—and even those men who followed the New Learning, and were expected to receive the English translation of the Bible in England, turned away from it, because Luther was at the bottom of it. *Fairly*—correctly, justly. *Judge*—estimate. *Their action*—the conduct of the men of the

New Learning in not receiving or welcoming the English translation of the Bible. *By viewing it*—by looking at it (their action). *In the light of the time*—from the view point of that time. The whole sentence means, if we wish to form a correct estimate as to whether the men of the New Learning in England (like Warham and More) were right or wrong in not welcoming Tyndale's English translation of the Bible, we must look at the question as people looked at it in those days and then we shall see that it was not at all strange that they turned their back upon the translation. *Over sea*—(take it as one word—an adverb) in the continent of Europe (with a special reference to Germany). *Might . . . . them*—might well (—naturally) have estranged them, as it actually did. *Movement*—the Reformation. *Seemed breaking down* appeared to undermine. *The very . . . . society*—those identical principles on which religion and society were founded or established. *Fabric of the church*—the entire structure, construction and framework of the Church. *Rent asunder*—torn and divided. The words "fabric" and "torn" are used metaphorically, comparing the framework of the Church to a piece of cloth, and rent like it. *And the centre . . . . unity*—and the middle point, that is the place (Rome) and the office (Pope) which kept the whole of Christendom united together. *Denounced*—publicly and solemnly accused. *Babylon*—the reference is to the 17th Chapter of Revelation (the last book in the New Testament) where a woman arrayed in purple and scarlet is described, and called all kinds of names, and upon her forehead was written the name of *Babylon*. Luther and his followers applied this name to Rome and the Pope and publicly proclaimed them to be as corrupt as the Woman, named Babylon, is described in Revelation. *Passing into anarchy*—gradually changing into lawlessness and confusion, that is



the very leaders of the movement of Reformation were little by little beginning to do just what they liked, and ignored all the laws of the church and society. *Steadily*—firmly, without any fear or hesitation. *Moving onward*—advancing. *Denial*—rejection. *Catholic*—a greek word, meaning *universal*, and applied to the whole Church of christ all over the world. *Dogma*—tenet or doctrine, an article of belief, a teaching of the church believed in by all Christians. *Luther . . .*, another—went on fearlessly refusing to believe one teaching after another of the church Universal. *Still clung to*—adhered to or believed in them. *Ready to fling away*—prepared to cast off or reject. That is to say, if Luther went a long way in refusal to believe many of the Church doctrines, his followers went further still, prepared to reject even what Luther accepted. *The Reformer of Wittemberg*—a figure of speech called *autonymasia*, meaning Luther who was closely connected with Wittemberg (see appendix). *Fiercely*—vehemently. *Religious excitement*—ferment in the public mind concerning religion. *Kindling*—blazing up. *Wild dreams*—violent expectations or visions—*Social revolution*—of turning society upside down. *And meanwhile . . .* *revolution*—and in the interval people were so stirred up by this religious movement, that they entertained exaggerated hopes of seeing a complete change of every thing in society and men stood aghast—and people shuddered. *At*—When they saw. *The horrors of a Peasant War*—the shocking crimes committed in connection with the Peasant war. *A* is used here instead of *the* for the following reason:—there were many horrors occurring then, more or less the outcome of the Reformation, and the Peasant War in 1525, was one of these. *As . . .* *Bible*—only in the character of a translation of the Bible. *As a part . . .* *movement*—as a piece

of work closely connected with the course of proceedings led by Luther. *Bore*—carried, had on it. *Stamp*—impression or sign-manual, as it were, of thoughts and opinions indented with Luther. *Version*—rendering. *Ecclesiastical words*—denoting things and offices current or held in the Church. "*Church*" . . . . "*Elder*".—The word "*Church*" was translated as "*congregation*", for example, and the word "*priest*" was rendered as "*elder*". *Company with*—along or together with. *Luther's bitter invectives*—the sharp or acrimonious words of censure and reproach uttered by Luther against the Church and the Pope. *Reprints* . . . . *Wyclif*—new editions of pamphlets written by Wyclif against the Pope and many of the Church doctrines then current in England. *Traders*—merchants. *Of the Steelyard*—belonging to the Hansa League or union. *Steelyard* literally means the balance or weighing machine; hence that league (of traders) which regulated trade and commerce (See Appendix). *Importing*—bringing into England (for this Hansa or Hansatic or Steelyard merchants had a branch establishment in London; therefore, *importing* and *exporting*). *Heresical*—teaching and partaking of the nature of heresy. *The book* and *it* both refer to Tynedale's English translation of the Bible.

*Para. 4.*—*Look little heed*—took almost no notice. *Religious matters*—affairs pertaining to religion. Although he was a Cardinal and an Archbishop, he concerned himself mostly with matters political, as chancellor of Henry VIII. *Policy*—line of conduct in connection with politics—*His policy*—the principle or line of conduct which he adopted and upon which he acted. *Political adhesion to Rome*—adherence to the Pope on grounds of civil government and administration—*Presided over*—conducted or took the leading part. *Sol. . . penance*—a seriously conducted service in conn

with penitents. *Submitted*—surrendered. *Steelyard men*—Hanseatic merchants, that is English, and possibly some German traders of the Hansa League. *And he submitted in St. Paul's*—And Wolsey conducted an impressive service in St. Paul's Cathedral, London, when some traders of the Hansa League surrendered themselves as penitents, confessed that they had sinned against the Church in importing into England the English translation of the Bible by Tyndale, and received public absolution or pardon.

*Page 45.*—*Abbots*—monks in charge, as superiors, of priories, (next in rank to Abbots) with their mitres on their heads. *Mitre* is the head-dress of Bishops Archbishops and Abbots. Some priors of a higher rank were allowed to wear mitres. *United* is, therefore, used here as an essential, and not an ornamental epithet, meaning, these were not ordinary but mitred priors. *And he, i. e., Cardinal Wolsey. In his whole pomp mitred*—gorgeously attired in all the vestments of his office, with the mitre on. *Looked on*—continued to look on the scene, *Books*—Tyndale's English translation of the Bible, and possibly some of Wyclif's tracts. *The before fire* carries a familiarising force, that is, it means the fire was well known to the writer and reader of the quoted passage, at the time. *Rood of Northen*—the crucifix on the north side of the cathedral. *Crucifix*—cross and the image of Christ on it. *About*—round. *In* is adverb and part of the verb *to cast* which it modifies. *Fagots*—also spelt *faggots*, are bundles of wood for burning. *Scenes*—sights. *Vain*—useless, empty. *In the presence of*—before. *Grew*—increased. The whole passage means, no burning of English Bibles no public accusation could stop the zeal of the reformers, for it increased rapidly. *Scholar*—learned man. *The Gospel*—the translation gospel. The word means 'good news'. *Affirm*—solemnly declare *Would*

denotes determination. *Eager for*—impatient to obtain, earnest to get. *Hud to give*—were obliged to give. *Smuggled*—brought secretly, though forbidden. *Circulated*... passed on from hand to hand. *Trading classes*—small trades people, petty merchants. *Agency*—means instrumentality. *Association*—guild or society. *Of*—composed of. *Whose missionaries*—missionaries sent by whom. *Missionaries* here means those who were sent to preach about the Reformation and sell or give away the English Bibles. *Spread . . . . at large*—were scattered freely all over England.

*Para. 5.—They . . . . way*—went. *Universities of Oxford and Cambridge*. *Intellectual impulse*—mental impetus. *Quickening . . . . speculation*—began quickly to make people think for themselves; began to stir up the power of thinking and forming ideas. *Won . . . . heresy*—earned a reputation for producing heterodox people, i. e., people whose views of religion were not sound or correct. *His fagot*—Barnes was one of the cuprits found in possession of a copy of Tyndales English Bible, and so he was made publicly to burn or help in burning these Bibles in the fire made near the great crucifix by the north door of St. Paul's cathedral, London. *Lutherans*—followers of and believers in Luther's teaching against the Pope and the Church. *Introduced*—admitted. *Cardinal College*—the college founded by Cardinal Wolsey. *Spread the contagion*—diffused the infection. Another metaphorical expression, likening the Lutheran teaching on the Reformation to a catching disease. *Formed*—a number of christians who believed in the Reformation joined together and made up a society. *Discussion*—reasoning and reflecting upon. *Epistles*—the 21 letters written by St. Paul and other apostles to the different churches of Asia and Europe. They make up the main portion of the New Testament. *Soon included*—counted among its numbers,

before long. *The centre of this group*—the chief person round whom all the others of the company gathered. *Strove*—tried hard. *To dissuade*—deter, restrain by reasoning. *Fresh*—new and additional. *By warnings . . . dangers*—by giving notice of the dangers hanging over them, i. e., by telling them that they would do wisely if if they did not join, as they would soon be overtaken by dangers that might threaten their lives.

*Page 46.*—*Besought*—implored. *Tender mercy*—loving kindness. *For* denotes adjuration :—I adjure you, that is solemnly appeal to you by the loving kindness of God. *He . . . me*—he should not refuse to admit me. *I trusted verily*—I truly and sincerely believed. *That he*, i. e., God. *Begun this on me*—commenced this operation on me, that is, he who has begun to make me feel thus. *Forsake*—desert. *Grace*—divine help and strength. *To . . . . end*—to go on in it till the end of my life: *Therein*—in it, that is, in the teachings of the Reformation. *Took . . . . arms*—embraced me. *Grant*—help you. May God Almighty help you to continue in it to the end of your life. *Grant* here carries the optative force of the subjunctive Mood. *Take*—adopt receive. *For*=as, denoting exchange. *Son in Christ*—the relationship (of son) founded on Christ. *In* denotes reference.

## APPENDIX III.

### 1. & 2.—HISTORICAL AND BIOGRAPHICAL.

*A short history of the English Translation of the Bible.*—The earliest attempts to translate only fragments of the Bible were made by Cadmon, Bede, Alfred, Alfric &c., all long before the date of the Norman conquest two more fragmentary translations were published, bringing the date down to 1349. The people were, in the meantime, forbidden by the Church to read any portion of the Bible, least of all, any translation of it. In the face of this

opposition by the Church, began the work of translation in the following order :—

1. *Wyclif's Translation* of the Bible in English was finished in 1380. It was made from the Latin version, called the Vulgate, as Wyclif knew neither Hebrew nor Greek.

2. *Tyndale's Translation*, a short account of which is given in the lesson. It was the whole of the New Testament, published about 1526. The revival of learning and the invention of printing made it easier to publish and multiply copies. He also translated the first five books of the old Testament in 1529, directly from Hebrew, and in the following year, the book of the prophet Jonah.

3. *Miles Coverdale's Translation* in 1535. He was a friend of Tyndale, and this was the first complete English Bible.

4. *Henry the Eighth's Bible's*.—It was translated by John Rogers, another friend of Tyndale's, though on the title page it bore the name of Thomas Matthews, and was sanctioned by Henry VIII. In 1539 was published the *Great Bible* which was simply a revision of the foregoing edition. In 1540 came out *Grammer's Bible* as it contained a preface by him. A reprint of this followed next year bearing the names of the Bishops of Durham and Rochester.

5. *The Geneva Bible*.—This was translated by the English exiles at Geneva, during the persecution of the Protestants in Mary's reign. The New Testament was published first, in 1557, then the Old Testament, 1560. Under Elizabeth new editions of Grammer's Bible were issued in 1592, 1566, and 1568, but they were felt to be very defective, and the Geneva Bible satisfied only the Puritans.

6. *The Bishops Bible* in 1568. This was made by Parker, Archbishop of Canterbury. New editions of this translation were issued in 1569 and 1572, but it never became popular.

7. *The Douay Bible*—It was printed in 1609 by the Popish exiles from England settled in Rheims. It derived its name from Douay where it was published;

8. *The Authorised Version*.—This was an entirely new translation set a going under the authority of James I. The work was portioned out among the most talented and learned men in the kingdom, to the number of 47. The undertaking was begun in 1604, completed in 1607, and finally published in 1611. This is the version still in use.

9. *The Version*.—This was undertaken in 1879, but the accuracy of King James's Authorised Version is apparent from the fact that its defects, after the lapse of two centuries and a half, are comparatively very few. The now revised translation of the new Testament was published by the Oxford and Cambridge University presses in 1881, but the revised version of the Old Testament was not completed till 1884. There is no other translation of the Bible after the revised version, although attempts have been made in America and England, to reduce language into modern English.

Q.—Give brief accounts of the prominent persons mentioned in this piece, in the order they occur.

A.—1. *Luther Martin*, the great reformer of the Church was born at Elsieben, in Prussian or Lower Saxony, 10th November 1483. Educated originally for the legal profession, he abandoned it in favour of the monastic life, and entered the Monastery of Augustines, after finishing his college education in the university of Erfurt, and taking his M. A. degree there. In the monastery he was made priest and professor of philosophy in

the then new university of Wittenberg. In 1510 he visited Rome and the court of pope Leo. X. Before this he had come across a complete edition of the Bible, and discovered that it contained much more than what was used in the services of the Church. Now in Rome he found out the irreligion and corruption of the clergy, and all this combined destroyed his reverence for the scanty of the Pope. Then came the sale of indulgences. Leo. X being in want of money sent written pardon of sins throughout Europe for sale. Tetzel, an agent of the pope, arrived with some of these indulgences at Wittenberg and began to drive a trade in sin-pardoning. Luther's indignation now rose to a bubbling point, and on the 31st of October 1517, he publicly denied that the pope could pardon sins. From this date began the historical struggle between him and the church, which as a movement in which many took Luther's part, came to be known and called the Reformation. And so, till the date of his death (18th February 1546) the work of Reformation proceeded with unabated vigour. Luther's name will for ever remain associated, not only with the Reformation in Europe, but also with the Bible he first translated into High German, and the hymns and pamphlets he published, thus rendering inculcable service in the cause of German literature, and uniting the German nation by this unity of language.

2. *Wyclif* or *Wycliff* or *Wiclif*, a great English reformer of the 14th century, was born at the village of Sprösswall, not very far from Old Richmond in Yorkshire. The exact date of his birth is not known, but is generally supposed to fall between 1315 and 1320 or 1324. He has been called "the Warning Star of the Reformation" in England, where he was the first to oppose the authority of the people. He was a distinguished scholar of Oxford, and translated portions of the Bible into English. He died on 31st December 1384.



3. *Tyndale, William*, or *Tindal*, another English reformer, born between 1480 and 1490 or 1,500. probably at the manor of Huist, near Slymbridge, "among the cotswolds", in Gloucesters hire. He studied at Oxford and Cambridge. His attention being drawn to the need of a translation of the Scriptures in English, he went to London, expecting the Bishop of London to help him in the work. In this he was cruelly disappointed. Then he went to the continent where his work is described in the lesson. Through the interference of the English government he was apprehended at Antwerp by the representatives of Karl V, and in 1536 he was brought to trial at Augsburg, and condemned to the stake. On Friday 6th October, he was first strangled and then burnt to death. His last words were, " Lord, open the King of England's eyes ;" Tyndale was a man of rare sincerity of purpose, and simplicity of life. He was well versed in Greek and Hebrew, and master of unsurpassed English style remarkable for strength and natural dignity.

4. *More, Sir Thomas*.—Son of Sir John More, was born in London 1478 or 1480. He was rapidly attaining distinction, when he lost the favour of Henry VII. But Henry VIII smiled on him, pressed him with favours, and appointed him Chancellor in place of the disgraced Wolsley. Time came when Henry VIII wanted More to give his approval of Catherine's divorce. He resigned his office instead, and retired from public life. In 1534 his assent was asked to the act which secured the crown to the issue of Anne Boleyn, but on his refusal he was imprisoned in the Tower for a year, and was beheaded on the 6th of July 1535. He was the friend of Erasmus, Latimer and others, a man of staunchest principles, purest morals and sincerest piety,—a perfect English statesman and scholar.

5. Warham, William, an English bishop and statesman, was born in Hampshire in 1450. He was educated in Oxford, and successively became, Lord Chancellor, bishop of London and archbishop of canterbury. In 1515 he resigned his Chancellorship to Wolsley, and died in 1532. He was the friend of Erasmus and a great patron of literature.

6. Erasmus, Desiderius, one of the most eminent scholars of the age in which he lived, was born at Rotterdam in 1467. He lost his father and mother early, and his guardians prepared him for the monastic life, but he disliked it, and became an ordinary priest. From 1496 to 1535, he filled Europe with the fame of his scholarship, wrote many learned works, lectured in Paris, Italy, the Netherlands, and also in Cambridge where he was appointed Margaret professor of divinity, and died in 1536 at Basil. He was a friend of Sir Thomas More, and the New Learning. One of his celebrated works gave such offence to the monks of Basil that they said "Erasmus laid the egg which Luther hatched," meaning he began the work of Reformation which Luther completed. With Luther, however, he was not on friendly terms, as his treatise on Free Will had greatly offended the celebrated reformer. Although a very learned man, he was not a hero like Tyndale.

7. Barnes, Robert, Dr. Nothing much is known of him, except that he was a great Cambridge scholar, and chaplain to Henry VIII. He wrote a treatise on justification by faith, and was burnt in Smithfield for Lutheranism.

8. Latimer, Hugh, bishop of Worcester, was born at Thurstaston, in Leicestershire, in 1490. He was educated at Padua, and in Cambridge. From being a zealous papist, he became a zealous protestant, and a vigorous reformer. This drew upon him the enmity of the Cambridge

theologians. Having declared that the marriage of Henry VIII with his brother's widow Catherine of Aragon was illegal, he was appointed a royal chaplain, and consecrated bishop of Worcester in 1535. In 1540, he was forced to resign his see. Shortly after he was arrested and imprisoned in the Tower where he remained till the accession of Edward VI when he was set free and offered back his see. He preferred to retire from active life and lived in the country from where now and then he indulged in an outburst of vigorous preaching,—an offence for which he had been deprived during Henry the Eighth's reign of his bishopric. When Mary ascended the throne, there was a reaction against the protestants, and Latimer was again arrested, brought to Oxford and condemned to death at the stake in 1555. When burning to death, he addressed Ridley (bishop of Rochester and afterwards of London), a fellow martyr, the famous words: "Play the man, Master Ridley, we shall this day light such a candle, by God's grace, in England, as I trust shall never be put out."

### 3. GEOGRAPHICAL.

1. *Northern Germany* which Luther won from its adherence to the Pope, included Brandenburg, consisting of the modern districts of Berlin, Potsdam and Frankfurt; Palatinate, composed of the Upper or Bavarian Palatinate, and the Lower Palatinate of the Rhine; Saxony and Württemberg.

2. *Cotswolds or Coteswolds*, a range of hills in Gloucestershire, extending from North to South, upwards of 50 miles in length and about 20 miles broad, separating the Thames and the seven basins. The highest point is Cleare Hill, 1134 feet above the sea level. Turpins and cloves are cultivated on these hills, and a fine breed of coarse-haired sheep are fed there. The forests (*woldwood*) from which they derive their name have disappeared.

3. *Bosworth Field*.—See Lesson VI in the text book. The battle fought here between the Earl of Richmond, (Henry VII) and Richard III may be said to have been the last of the Wars of Roses, as the Tudor line of Kings, descended from the Lancastrian faction won England for good from the Yorkists.

4. *Oxford*.—In Orfordshire, famous for its ancient University, founded originally so far back as the time of King Alfred, or as some think, in the reign of Edward the Confessor. Up to the present time, beginning from 872, and ending with 1874, it contains 21 colleges, and 4 halls, all of which are corporate bodies.

5. *Cambridge*.—In Cambridgeshire, also famous for its University. From an early period,—how early not known,—it was the residence of numerous students. About the middle of the 13th century they began to congregate in hostels under a principal. This was the beginning of the University system. It comprises 17 Colleges, commencing from 1257, and coming down to 1800.

6. *Wittenberg* or *Wittenberge* is a town of Prussia, on the right bank of the Elbe, 240 feet above the sea. It is famous in history for the opposition which Luther made here publicly by opposing Tetzel who came to sell indulgences or pardon of sins issued by Pope Leo. X. This is also the town which then contained the Augustinian Monastery where Luther was first a monk, and where afterwards the famous reformer was a professor of theology and philosophy in the University of that name.

7. *Hamburg* (literally a harbour town) is the largest of three Hanse towns of the German Empire. It is the greatest port of the continent, and, next to London, Liverpool and Glasgow, the most important commercial place in Europe. It stands on the north bank of the Elbe, 75 miles by railway, E. S. E. of its mouth, and 170

miles N. W. of Berlin. Hamburg adopted the Reformed religion preached by Luther in 1529.

8 *Kolu* is a fortified city of Prussia, and capital of the Rhineland province, on the left bank of the Rhine. When Tyndale went to Kolu, there was a printing press established there by a German named Quantil, where Tyndale was enabled by the English merchants of the place to begin printing his translation of the Bible.

9. *Worms* is one of the oldest towns of Germany, three-fourths of a mile from the left bank of the Rhine. It is also one of the most historical towns of Germany, having been the seat of many Imperial Diets, the most famous of which was that summoned by Karl V and made memorable by Luther to the world when standing before a hall full of emperors, electors, archbishops, bishops, and a number of other magnates, he publicly refused to recant. In 1868 Worms commemorated the work of Luther by erecting at a cost of £ 17,000, the finest monument to the great reformer.

10. *Carlstadt* or *Karlstadt* is a fortified town of Austria, in Croatia, on the Kulpa. It is a busy commercial place now, and has an old castle. In Luther's time the place was zealously guarded against his teaching, by order of Karl V. *Carlstadt* or *Karlstadt* was also the name of a fanatic who misunderstood the meaning of Luther's teaching, and misinterpreted his denunciations against the church as meaning the cessation of all authority, spiritual and temporal, and the equalization of all men's lot, lords and castles being such as were no longer to be endured. When in consequence of this, the present War broke out, and Luther took part against the revolt, and ordered the rebels to be cut down without mercy, *Carlstadt* and another fanatic, Thomas Münzer became furious against Luther. The passage in the lesson refers to this incident equally as well.

11. *The Hanseatic towns of North Germany*—Those are or rather were Hamburg, Lubeck and Burnswick. The league then known as the Hansa League was formed in 1241, to protect their commerce, and in course time it was joined by 85 towns, and became the most powerful of all the German confederations. London became one of its four chief foreign depots. The Hansa merchants so important and consequential that they were called *Easterlings* whence the modern word *sterling*. The league was originally formed to check feudal and kingly aggression suppress piracy and foster and promote commerce, in which objects it was highly successful. When in its success and flush of prosperity it began to exceed its legitimate limits, it began to have its strength sapped, and was practically dissolved in 1630. Only Lubeck, Hamburg and Danzig maintained their alliance till 1810. Lubeck, Hamburg and Bremen are still nominally free Hans towns.

#### 4.—EXPLANATORY.

Q.—Write full explanatory notes on the following :—

1. The Reformation 2. Lollards 3. Luther's protest at Wittemberg 4. But Tyndale had soon to fly with his sheets to worms 5. The New learning 6. Luther was steadily moving onwards from the denial of one Catholic dogma to that of another 7. Carlstadt was denouncing the reformer of Wittemberg 8. The horrors of a Peasant War 9. Church 10. Congregation 11. Priest 12. Elders 13. St. Paul's.

A.—1. *The Reformation* is the name given to that religious movement which, commonly speaking, began with Martin Luther, but which was properly speaking, only a name of that other and more comprehensive movement known by the expression Renaissance. Things had come to such a bad pass in the church, that if not Luther, some one else would have done the work, sooner or later. The difference between the Renaissance and the

Reformation is only the difference between a part and its whole. The characteristic mark of the Renaissance was the discovery by man of the world and of himself, in a sense not realised before. The special work of the Reformation concerned itself with the discovery of man in his spiritual relations. In this sense the Protestant Reformation falls under three aspects: Political, Literary and Moral.

2. *Lollards Lollardry*.—A religious sect which arose about the beginning of the 14th century at Antwerp. The name comes from a Low German word, meaning *lull*, as in *lullaby*, and is supposed to denote 'mumblers' or chanters of prayers. They spread quickly in Germany and the Netherlands and their name covered a great religious movement in England, and lasted for more than a century. In England, however, the name got mixed up with a native word, *Lollers*, meaning 'loungers', idle 'vagrants', and was used by orthodox churchmen as a term of scorn and insult for the followers of Wyclif. In 1382, with John Wyclif at their head, the heretics of this name were impugning some doctrines of the Catholic Church of England until a royal writ ordered the instant banishment of all favourers of Wyclif. His death was a great blow to their progress, as it then ceased to be an organised movement. But out of Lollardry, one great faith gradually evolved itself, a faith in the sole authority of the Bible as a source of religious truth.

3. *Luther's Protest at Wittemberg* refers to the time when the great reformer was professor of philosophy in the university of Wittemberg, and Tetzel, the agent of Pope Leo X came there to sell indulgences. Luther's indignation was so great that on the 31st of October 1517, he nailed upon the door of the palace church a thesis, containing 95 propositions in which he denied that the pope had the power of forgiving sins. This is known historically as Luther's Protest at Wittemberg.

4. By 1525 Tyndale had begun to print his New Testament at Quantel's press Kolu; but he had got only as far as signature K when the printers were ordered by the magistrates to stop, and Tyndale, and his assistant Roye were glad to escape with such sheets as they could hurriedly seize. This is the incident to which Green refers in the lesson.

5. *The New Learning or the Revival of Learning* is the English name for the French expression Renaissance which refers to a widespread movement that immediately succeeded the Middle Ages. It is commonly made to include the 15th and 16th centuries, but speaking exactly it began with Petrarch and ended with Leo X. Some precious fragments of classical literature came by chance to Italy, and to this literature the popular energies were directed. Petrarch, called the father of modern learning, and a number of others who followed him cultivated Greek, and for 200 years the aim of the best men was a pure Latin style. It was a feast of reason and the senses.

6. This alludes to what Luther and his followers did, day by day, in cutting themselves off from the Church of Rome. His followers went further than Luther himself. Luther began by denying that the pope had the power to forgive sins. His next step was to denying the superiority of the spiritual over the secular arm, that is, he denied that the pope was superior to a king or emperor. Then he asserted the superiority of the scriptures over the Church. He also rejected the Roman Church's teaching about the Lord's supper, and so, to the end of his life, he went denying teaching after teaching of the Catholic Church. His followers went ahead of him in the rapidity with which they denied these teachings or dogmas.



7. The authorities, secular as well as spiritual, of Carlstadt or Karlstadt were opposed to Luther and his movement. They, therefore, denounced Luther as a heretic just as he was denouncing the pope and the Church of Rome by all kinds of names. For the other explanation, see Geographical appendix on Carlstadt.

8. The Peasant War of 1525 in South Germany was the outcome of the people misunderstanding the real object of Luther's teaching. See above and the Geog: appendix on Carlstadt.

9—12. The word "Church" and "Priest" are translated from two Greek words which literally mean *an assembly* and *an elder* respectively. But the 'priest' and the 'Church' had both become so corrupt and immoral that Luther in his rage would have none of them,—not even the words; and so, he not only denounced the Church and the Priest, but would not use the words even. Those who followed Luther adopted his sentiments and began to use 'congregation' for 'Church' and 'elder' in place of 'priest'. The use of these two words, therefore, became the mark or sign-manual, as it were, of Lutheranism. Tyndale had, in his translation of the New Testament, employed these words instead of 'Church' and 'Priest'. More and Warham, therefore, naturally concluded that his book was Lutheran, and as their feelings ran very high then against Luther, on account of many acts of violence and lawlessness committed in the name of Luther and the Reformation, they would not and did not accord any welcome to his translation.

13. *St. Paul's Cathedral, London*, the grandest Protestant Church in the world, lies in the heart of the city, and was built, 1675—1710, under the famous architect, Sir Christopher Wren, and a master-mason, Thomas Strong. The cost of the building, amounting to £747,954 2s 9d, was met partly by public subscription and partly

by a small duty on coals. The cathedral (= Church having a bishop's chair) is built of Portland stone. The length of the Church from E. to W. is 500 feet, the extreme width 250 feet, the height from the foundation to the cross is 404 feet, or from the level of the street 360 feet, and the circumference of the whole building 2292 feet. The western entrance is the granted entrance, under a double portico of coupled columns. The other entrances in the north (to which allusion has been made in the lesson under the name of the Rood of Northen) and the south are semicircular, under porticos with six corinthian columns. There are now 64 monuments erected in the Church, 29 of which are to military, and 19 to naval heroes. Among the many objects of interest with which the cathedral abounds, may be mentioned Big Ben, as the great bell is named, weighing 11,474 pounds, originally cast in the reign of Edward I.

Q.—Explain clearly the following expressions:—(1) a vague restlessness (page 42, line 7). 2. Weak and fitful as was the life of Lollardry (page ditto, lines 8 and 9). 3. In the light of the time (page 44, line 3). 4. His policy was one of political adhesion to Rome (page 44, lines 28 and 29). 5. He presided over a solemn penance. 6. The intellectual impulse . . . . . speculation (page 45, lines 20 and 21).

A.—1. People felt restless in their mind, but they did not know why. *Restlessness* here implies an unsettled state of the mind full of disquieting thought. 2. As long as Lollardry was in existence, it existed in a feeble state, made no great noise, or large number of converts, sometimes suddenly blazing up like a flame, and then disappearing as suddenly. 3. If we measure it by the standard of enlightenment attained by the people of that time. 4. The principle on which he (Wolsey) acted was that which required him to adhere to the Pope on account

of reasons connected with the affairs of the country's government. Wolsey wanted to make Henry VIII dissatisfied with the Pope, by managing to delay the papal decision with regard to the illegality of Catherine of Aragon's marriage with Henry VIII. He showed faithful adherence, at the same time, to the see of Rome. His object was threefold: 1. That Henry might rebel against the Pope 2. That Wolsey might be made Pope 3. That, then, Henry VII might submit to Wolsey (made Pope) as he himself had adhered to the Pope 5). He directed impressive service held for imposing punishment on those who had committed the sin of heresy by taking Tyndale's translation of the Bible 6.) The spirit of New Learning had planted a generating force in the mental capacity of the people of Oxford and Cambridge, and this in its turn produced in them a lively desire to think out for themselves and form new ideas in matters connected with religion.

## 5. GRAMMATICAL.

Q.—Parse the following:—*Reformation* (Intro.). *As* (page 42, line 5), *Little* (line 6). *Beyond* (line 7). *As* (line 9). *All* (12). *Night* (12). *Born* (16). *Except* (23). *Learned* (25). *Ere* (25). *Will cause* (25). *For ty* (27). *Drawn* (28)—*Page* 43—*Humfrey Monmouth* (line 1). *The last* (7). *Only* (7). *In* (2) *My lord of London's palace* (lines 7 and 8). *All* (9). *Clasped* (16). *Heretofore* (17). *Such* (18). *Which, Had set Himself* (22). *On* (31). *Made* (31). *Page* 44. *Only* (line 6). *As under* (7). *As* (8). *To* (11) *Himself* (13). *As* (17). *As* (18). *As* (25). *One* (29). *Page* 45.—*In* (line 7). *St.* (1). *Cardinal* (3). *Crucifix* (6). *As* (8). *These* (8). *As* (11). *Even if* (12). *Over* (13). *Consisting* (16). *Principally* (16). *Once* (19). *At* (17). *In* (31). *Joining. Warnings and impending* (33).

*Ans—Page 43. Introd.—Reformation—Common noun used as a Proper noun, same case as “change”—Page 42—As—preposition governing “movement” in obj: case—Little—substantive in the sing number, nom. case subject to the verb “remained”—Beyond—prep: governing “restlessness” and “discontent”—As (=however)—subordinative conj: of concession, introducing the adv: clause “Weak . . . . . Lollardy”. All—indef: num: pron:; case in apposition with “groups”—night—adv: obj: of time. Horn—past part:; predicating “Tynedale”. Except (=unless)—subordinative conjunction denoting negative condition, introducing the adv: clause after it, but according to Old Eng: syntax it may be passed as a preposition or participial prep:; governing the noun clause after it. Learned—past participle used as an attributive adjective. Ere—pre: governing “years” in the obj: case; or it is an adverb, modifying the verb *pass* understood after “years”; or again, parse it as a subordinative conjunction denoting time and introducing the adv: clause “many years (pass)” after it. Will cause—a trans: verb of the mixed conjugation, having for its object the noun clause “a boy shall know more of the scripture” after it; but it should be expanded thus (to fit in with modern Eng: syntax:—“I will cause (this, that) a boy &c.” Forty—here used as a substantive in the plural number. Drawn (=being drawn or having been drawn)—participle (imperfect or perfect, as taken to mean *bring* or *having been*), predicating “he” after it.*

*Page 43.—H. Monmouth—case in apposition with “alderman”, before which the word London is to be passed as a Proper noun used as an adj:; qualifying “alderman.” The last—substantive, or adjective used as a noun. Only modifies “understood.” “In . . . place”—rearrange these words as—“in (the) palace of my lord*

of London" and then parse *in*, prep.; governing "*palace*" in the obj: case; *lord* governed by the prep: *of* and *London* governed by *of* for *London's*—*of London*, the Norman possessive. *All* (—whole)—an adjective of quantity, qualifying "*England*". *Clapped*—past part: here used as an attributive adj:—*Heretofore*—adv: modifying "*had spread*". Such—parse it either as a demonstrative adjective, pointing out the noun "*visit*" or as a dem: adv:, modifying the dem: adj: "*a*". *Which*—relative pronoun (having for its antecedent all the nouns before it, from "*poverty*" to "*fightings*") obj: case, governed by the trans: verb "*to bring*" after "*was* in the same line (22). *Had set*—trans: verb in the past p-rf: tense, having *which* for its object understood after "*the work*." *Himself* is an instance of the dative of interest. *On*—Governs "*which*" before it. *Made*—past part:, predicating "*book* understood before it, thus:—"The king . . . a book, on which he looked, as (he would look on a book) made &c." Briefly it can be made to predicate "*which*". In either case, parse "*as*" before "*made*" as an adv:, modifying "*made*."

Page 44.—*Only*—adv:, modifg: "*rent*". *Asunder*—adv:, used as the subjective complement of—"was rent" which it modifies. *As*—preposition, governing "*Babylon*" in the obj: case, which it is to be taken together as a prep:, phrase, subjective complement of "(was) denounced." *To*—prep:, governing *what* before it and "*Luther*". *Himself*—reflexive form of the pers: pron: used emphatically, case in apposition with "*Luther*" before it. *As*—prep, governing "*translation*" with which it is used jointly as a subjective complement of "*was*". *As*—can be passed either as a prep:, governing "*part*", or as a con:, subordinative, of manner introducing the contracted adv: clause "*a part . . . movement* (would come)"—Some would parse it as an adv: of

manner, modifg: would come" understood after it. *As*—adv:, modifying the adjective "*heretical*" with which jointly the phrase stands as objective complement of the factitive transitive verb "*denounced*" before it. This "*as*" can also be paraphrased in two other ways.—1 as (a) heretical (book)," in which case it will be a preposition—2. "as (he would denounce a) heretical (book), when it will be a subordinatate conjunction, introducing the adv: clause understood after it, or an adv: of manner modifying "would denounce" understood after it. *Unc*—dem: prom: same case as "*policy*."

Page 45.—*In*—governs "*church*" or "*cathedral*" understood after "*Paul's*." *St*, (= Saint)—both noun and adj:, here to be passed as an adj:, qualifying "*Paul*" contained in "*Paul's*"; thus:—*Paul's*=*of Paul Cardinal*—case in apposition with "*he*" before it. *crucifix*—same case as "*Rood*". *As*—relative pronoun (= which), same case as "*these*" which is subject to the verb "*were*" understood after it, the "*were*" written after "*these*" agrees with its subject "*scenes*" and "*denunciations*." *As*—adverb denoting effect, modifying the verb "*to affirm*". *Even*—adv: modify *if* which is a subordinative conj: introducing the adv: clause of condition after it. *Over*—adv: modifg: "*were smuggled*" consisting—pres: imperf: part: predicating "*association*." *Principally*—modifies "*of*" after it or the whole prep: phrase after it. *Once*—adv: used as a noun, governed by the prep: "*at*", in the objective case. *In*—prep: governing "*vain*" (here used as a noun) in the obj: case. *Joining*—trans: gerund, (having "*it*" for its object) in the ob: case, object of "*from*". *Warnings*—gerund object of "*by*". *Im*—pending—pres: imperf: part:, used attributively, predicating or qualifying "*dangers*."

Q.—Deal with some of the difficult infinitive used in the lesson.

A.—Page 42—*To exist* (6)—Gerundial inf.: used as an adv: to modify "*ceased*". *To read* (12)—Ger: inf: denoting purpose, used as an adv: modifying "*meeting*". *To fan* (15)—Ger: inf. of purpose, used as an adj: qualifying, "*breath*". *To feel* (18)—Ger. inf.: denoting result, used as an adv: modifying "*passed*."

Page 43—*To quit* (6)—Ger: inf: of purpose, used as adv. modifying the adj: "*needful*". *To hold* (6)—Ger: inf., used predicatively as an adv: modifying: "*was*" of which it is subjective complement. *To face* (19)—ger: inf: of purpose, used adverbially to modify "*could fire*". *To bring* (22)—Ger: inf: of purpose use predicatively as an adv: modifying "*was*" of which it is subjective complement. *To fly* (25)—Simple or noun inf., object of "*had*."

Page 44.—*To fling* (11)—ger: inf: of purpose, used adverbially to modify the adj: "*ready*". *To be given* (26)—Simple inf.: objective complement of the factitive trans: verb "*ordered*".

Page 45.—*To be burned* and *To go* (6)—both noun infinitives, subjective complement of "*were commanded*", expressed in the first and understood after "*heretics*" in the second case. *To cast* (7)—same as "*to be burned*" and "*to go*". *To give* (12)—noun infinitive, object of "*had*". *To dissuade* (32)—noun inf.: object of "*strove*" (=tried).

Page 46.—*To continue* (5)—gerundial infinitive of purpose, used as an adjective to qualify "*grace*". *To do* (8) present of the gerundial infinitive of purpose, used as a pro-verb (=to continue) and as an adverb, modifying "*grant*".

Q.—Turn some of the Direct speech found in the lesson into the Indirect Form of Narration.

A—Page 42.—Lines 24—27.—He told a learned controversialist that if God spared his life, ere many years he would cause a boy that drove a plough should know more of the scripture than he (controversialist did.) (This form is, however, not admissible in modern English which would require the sentence to be recast thus :—He told . . . . . life, . . . . . he would cause a *ploughboy* to know more . . . . . did).

2. Page 42 (lines 2—4).—His host said afterwards that he studied . . . . . book, and would eat . . . . . beer. (Note.—The tenses of the verbs in the subordinate clauses of the above sentence are not changed as they denote a *habit* in the past).

3. (Lines 14—18).—A contemporary tells us that as they came . . . . . town, they returned . . . . . earth. (Note.—The tenses of the verbs in the subordinate clauses of this sentence also remain unchanged, because the verb “(tell)” of the Principal clause is in the present tense, which according to the Sequence of Tense allows the verbs of the subordinate clauses to remain in the Last. The same rule operates on all the other sentences within inverted commas, having the finite verb of the Principal clause in the Present Tense.

4. Page 46 (lines 7—9).—He came . . . . . arms kissed and wished that the Lord God Almighty grant me so to do, telling me from hence forth to take him for my father, and that he would take me for his son in Christ.

Q.—Mention the force or meaning expressed by some of the peculiar prepositions used in the piece.

A.—Introduction—of (before ‘the religions change’) has a *partitive* force. With (before Luther’) denotes *cause* or *agency*. Of (before ‘Wyclif’) carries a *possessive* force.

Page 42.—Beyond (line 7)—denotes *exception* and means *in excess of*. Of (26)—means *concerning*. Of 27—has an *adjectival* force.



Page 43.—*For* (line 1)—denotes *direction in time*. *At* (4)—means *proximity in occupation*. *Of* (7)—has the force of—*reference*. *With* (16)—means *instrumentality*—*of* 17—carries an *attributive force*. *Of* (23)—has a *partitive force* from which comes here the meaning of *reference*. *At* (31)—*proximity cause*.

Page 44.—*In* (line 3)—*state or manner*. *Into* (9)—means *state of* (10 line, after '*denial*'—has first a *partitive*, then a *reference* and lastly an *objective force*, the last being special force here. *At* (15)—*proximity to cause*. *Of* (16)—means *cause arising out of the partitive force*. *Into* (21) means *form*. *Of* (24)—*partitive force*. *In* (24)—*state or manner*.

Page 45.—*By* (5)—*nearness in place*. *For* (10)—*object*. *For* (22)—*clause*. *For* (29)—*purpose*. PAGE 46.—*For* (2)—*end or aim*. *For* (twice in line 9).denotes *comparison*, N.B. For other important prepositions, consult the *Notes*.

Q.—Analyse in tabular form the following sentences:  
—1). "*But weak . . . . . kill*" (page 42 lines 8—11).  
2). "*But Tyndale . . . . . English shore*," page 43, lines 5—29) 3)—"*Luther was . . . . . jlingaway*" (page 44, lines 9—11) 4) "*But scenes . . . . . every hour*" page 45, lines 7—9).

A.—(Transfer the answers here from pages 13—16)

## 6.—GENERAL.

Q.—Comment upon the words *Church*, *Indulgences*, *Penance*, *Bishop*, *Heresy*, *Evangelical Truth*, *Catholic Dogma* and *Ecclesiastical Words*.

A.—The word *Church* is used in different senses :  
1. It means the congregation of christians taken collectively as a single body all over the world ; as, the Church and the State. 2. It means a part of this body in any particular part of the world ; as, The church of England and the church of Scotland. 3. It means any building used as a place of public worship ; as, St. Paul's church.

Ni	claus	Ni	Ni	Still, to which
----	-------	----	----	-----------------

Principal clauses, and one subordinate clause.

3 m	each	were	Ni	again	in the presence of an enthusiasm
	Ni	(were)	Ni	As follows	Ni
	Ni	green	Ni	Ni	every

and more than one (two) subordinate clauses.

C.—Which (included in <i>what</i> ) Luther still clung to.	Adjective Clause to B, qualifying “(that included in <i>what</i> )”.	Which	Luther
---	---	-------	--------

*Note.*—It is a mixed sentence, containing more than one (two)

A.—But scenes and denunciations such were vain..... .....enthusiasm.	Principal Clause in adversative coordination with some foregoing Clause.	But	Scenes and denunciations
B.—As (= which) these (were) ...	Adjective Clause to A, qualifying “scenes denunciations.”	As (—which)	These
C.—Which grew every hour ...	Adjective Clause to A, qualifying “enthusiasm.”	Which	Which

*Note.*—It is a complex sentence containing one principal clause,

*Indulgences* are written pardons of sins. The Pope issues these and people buy them. It is supposed to release a soul from the punishment of sins it is suffering in Purgatory, a place of punishment located intermediately between Heaven and Hell, where it is said to be undergoing a process of being purged from its sins. The Pope claims to have received authority from Christ to forgive such sins. Luther denied this publicly at Wittenberg.

*Penance* is bodily punishment ordered by the church to be inflicted on some special offenders, so that by punishing their bodies temporarily, their souls may be saved from eternal punishment.

*Bishop* literally means an *overseer*. The clergy are divided into three orders : 1. Bishops. 2. Priests, and 3. Deacons. The first is the highest officer of the church exercising control over all, and the area within which he exercises this control is called his *See*.

*Heresy* according to its derivation, means to cut away or to cut off and separate. A man who teaches something contrary to the teaching of the Bible and the church and collects a number of followers, is called a *heretic*, and the sin of which he thus becomes guilty is called *Heresy*.

*Evangelical Truth* is truth taught by the evangelists, viz. Mathew, Mark, Luke and John, writers of the four gospels containing the life of Christ. This kind of truth is found only in these four gospels.

*Catholic Dogma* is some thing taught authoritatively by the church, and upheld by her officers. They are said to be truths inferred indirectly from the scripture or the Word of God.

*Ecclesiastical Words* are words or terms employed by the church, and refer to things and persons belonging to the church—"Priest," "Bishop," "church," "Penance,"

"Absolution" are some of these words. They form the vocabulary of the league of the church.

Q.—Why did men like Wyclif and Tyndale find it so difficult to translate the Bible into English ?

A.—The difficulty arose, not from their poverty or insufficient education and scholarship, but from the fact that the church of Rome then laid it down that it was an act of sin to teach or to read or to translate the Bible, from the original in any vulgar or vernacular tongue. Those that disobeyed this order were banned as heretics, and made punishable by law.

Q.—Use the following expressions in other senses than those found in the lesson.—“*Hand to hand*,” “*at large*,” “*small beer*” “*to the end*.”

A.—They had a hand-to-hand fight (—fight at close quarters.) The murderer is still at large (—free, not yet arrested). He thinks no small beer of himself (—highly of himself. It is a slang expression). He labours hard to the end that (—so that) he may succeed.

Q.—Point out briefly the difference between *war* and *battle*, *system* and *method*, *experience* and *observation*, *dream* and *vision*, *denial* and *refusal*.

A.—A *war* is a series of *battles*. *System* is the arrangement of many things into a united whole, and *method* is the manner of that arrangement. *Experience* is *personal*, *immediate* and *direct observation*; and *observation* is *knowledge gained otherwise*. *Dreams* are things seen when one is *asleep* while *visions* may be and generally are seen when one is *awake*. The former arise from imagination, the latter may or may not. *Denial* is *not owning some truth or fact* while *refusal* is *not gratifying some one else's wish or request*.

Q.—Form verbs from *system*, *flame*, *heart*, *friend*, *Evangelist* and English and adjectives from *adherence*, *dogma Paul*, *oxford*, *epistle* and *elder*, and give an example of the use of each.

A.—*Systematise* ; as, he systematises all his work. *Inflame* ; as, angry words inflame the mind. *Dishearten* ; as, His failure disheartened him. *Be friend* ; as, be friend the poor. *Evangelise* ; as they will evangelise the world. *Anglicise* ; as they are anglicised in their habits.

*Adhesive* ; as these stamps are not adhesive. *Dogmatic* ; as he is Domatic in his teaching. *Pauline* ; as there are many Pauline epistles. *Oxonian* ; as, he is Oxonion in his manners. *Epistolary* : as, this is an epistolary communication. *Elderly* ; as he is an elderly man of respectable appearance.

Q.—Form idiomatic expressions from the verbs *To look*, *To break*, *To give*, *To hold* and *to go*, besides those given in the lesson, and furnish their meaning.

A.—1. *To look down on*—to despise. *To look up to*—to respect. *To look to*—to take care of. *To look out*—to beware. *To look after*—To attend to. *To look up*—to improve. 2. *To break down*—to fail in health. *To break in*—to interrupt *To break up*—to dissolve or end anything—*To break up with*—to quarrel. 3. *To give in*—to yield. *To give way*—to break down. *To give out*—to divulge. 4. *To hold on*—to continue. *To hold out*—to offer. *To hold forth*—to preach. *To hold by*—to support. *To hold off*—to stand aloof. 5. *To stand by*—to support. *To stand over*—to delay. *To stand up for*—to champion.







## 7.—GLOSSARY.

- Adherence—adhesion.  
 Agency—Instrumentality of men.  
 Alderman—A borough magistrate, like a bench or honorary magistrate.  
 Anarchy—Misrule, confusion.  
 Association—Union of men for any special purpose.  
 Beer—Ale.  
 Circulated—sent round.  
 Congregation—an assembly of men for religious worship.  
 Contagion—infection, catching a disease by touch.  
 Contemporary—one living at the the same time (as another.)  
 Controversialist—a debater.  
 Dogma—religious teaching.  
 Discussion—debate.  
 Dissuade—other than persuade, advising to turn away from.  
 Discontent—dissatisfaction.  
 Dénunciation—a formal declaration or threat.  
 Ecclesiastical—pertaining to the Church.  
 Estranged—alienated.  
 Evangelist—Gospel or Gospel-writer.  
 Establish—confirm, strengthen.  
 Epistles—letters (long or short on religious subjects).  
 Enthusiasm—zeal.  
 Heretics, Heretical—False teachers, referring to false teaching.  
 Impending — Threatening, about to fall.  
 Impulse—Impetus, force causing action.  
 Instance—example.  
 Invective—abusive attack.  
 Penance—punishment, for sin.  
 Prosecution—a civil or criminal suit.  
 Protest—disclaim, resist.  
 Smouldering—burning slowly.  
 Solicitation—earnest request.  
 Speculation—thought, theorising.  
 System—organisation.  
 Transcripts— Handwritten copies.  
 Tendency—learning.  
 Vague—uncertain, indistinct.  
 Version—translation, rendering, edition.  
 Warnings—admonitions.

## RALEIGH AND VIRGINIA.

*Introduction.*—*While*—during the time that. *Men like Drake*—Drake and others like Drake. *Like Drake*—resembling him in daring, enterprise and ability. *Challenging Spain*—inviting Spaniards to a contest, calling on the Spaniards to settle by a contest as to whether Spain or England should be supreme on the sea and in America. *Wiser*—more sensible. *Nobler*—taking higher views of things, more ingenuous. *Striving*—trying, making great efforts. *To plant*—to found, to settle, to fix—*colonies*—settlements. (The word denotes, the place as well as the people who leave their mother-land and settle down in another and a far-off place). *To plant colonies*—to settle Englishmen in far-off countries (in America) out of England. *Should make*—would hold out the promise of making, or, was sure to make. *New World*—newly discovered world (in 1492), i.e., America. *Should . . . . ground*—was sure to put the American soil under the English, and not the Spanish nation. *Unsuccessful . . . were*—although they failed. *Efforts*—attempts, strivings. *That . . . . founded*—that the first batch of English people were helped to settle down in different parts of America. *Since*—from that point of time. *Grown*—increased and developed.

Page 68. Para 1.—*Queen*—Elizabeth. *Her adventurers*—enterprising men helped and patronised by her. *Dazzled*—blinded. *Dreams*—expectations. *Finding*—Discovering. *Gold*—the metal of this name and not gold coins. *Were . . . . gold*—were misled by the expectations that they would discover raw gold. *Frozen regions*—the extremely cold countries. *Sounder Judgment*—more correct discernment, more thorough good sense. *Better knowledge*—more correct information. *Watched*—closely observed. *Progress*—course. *Fisheries*—the business of

catching fish and trading in it. *Watched* . . . . *fisheries*—closely observed how the fishing trade went. *Formed*—devised. *Healthy*—wholesome. *Plans*—projects. *Formed*—planned sound projects, arranged in his mind sound projects. *For*—for the purpose of. *Colonisation*—settling Englishmen in America. *Had been*—was before this. *Soldier*—military officer, one who had fought in battles. *Parliament*. The House of Commons.

*Page 69.*—*Had written*—had written books or treatise. *Judiciously*—wisely, with sound judgment. *Navigation*—the science and art of sailing and managing ships. *Censured*—blamed, found fault with. *Principles*—primary laws. *And* . . . . *liberty*—and though the public found fault with him for not knowing the primary laws regulating freedom. *Esteemed*—valued, appreciated, regarded with respect. *Sincerity*—genuineness, *Piety*—devoutness, devotion in the service of God. *Sincerity of his piety*—for his true godliness. *Alike*—equally, in equal proportion. *Fickleness*—changeableness of disposition. *Free* . . . . *fear*—as fearless as he was firm in his opinions. *Turned him aside*—caused him to swerve. *Pursuit of honour*—following the right path, doing what was upright. *Service*—performance of duties. *Danger* . . . . *sovereign*—He never turned aside from doing what was upright or doing his duty by his queen, because such a course would be perilous. *Inevitable*—unavoidable, certain to befall, *Fame of virtue*—good name gained by doing good and noble deeds. *Immortal*—cannot perish, imperishable, lives for ever in the memory of men and in the history of nations, is never forgotten. *Patent*—a letter of authority from the crown. *Formed*—drawn up. *Commercial theories*—views held by the merchants. *Perpetual efficacy*—to be effective, or in force always. *Plantation*—colony, settlement.

*Established*—set up, founded. *Within six years*—before 6 years had passed from the date of the patent. *Belong to*—be residents of. *The rights . . . . . promised*—It was promised by the queen and put down in the patent that they would possess the privileges possessed by all Englishmen. *To Gilbert . . . . . discover*—it was promised to Sir Humphrey Gilbert that he himself, or, in the event of his death, those whom he would name in his will, would be owners of the land he might find out. *Assigns*—*Assignees*—persons to whom any property is assigned or transferred. *Sole*—undivided. *Jurisdiction*—the right of exercising a Judge's or a ruler's authority. *Civil and Criminal*—matters relating to property or crimes, that is, dealing with law-suits which refer to property or crimes. *Territory*—region. *Within*—lying within. *Leagues*—3 miles in England. *Within . . . . . settlement*—lying inside a radius of 600 miles from the centre where his colony stood. *With . . . . . authority*—with the highest power to make laws and enforce them. *Under this patent*—by means of the power conferred by this royal letter of authority. *Collected*—got together. *A . . . . , adventurers*—a number of enterprising men who offered themselves of their own accord (without any force being put on them. *Contributing . . . . . preparations* paying the largest amount of subscription from his own private income towards preparing the expedition. *Preparations*—things to get ready (for the expedition). *Jarrings . . . . . ensued*—disagreements and factions following, i.e., the adventurers quarreled among themselves and made up small parties opposed to one another. *Abandoned*—gave up. *In considerately*—thoughtlessly, without due consideration. *The General*—the leader of the party,—Sir H. Gilbert. *Assured friends*—reliable friends, friends who had given this sure promise to go out with him. *Step-brother*—literally one who had

*stepped* in the brother's place. *Put to sea*—set sail. *Lost*—gone,—sunk or taken possession of by the Spaniards. *Misfortune*—ill luck. *Compell'd*—forced. *The remainder*—the rest of the ships. *Alive in force, effective.* *Grants of land*—granting lands in America. *Gilbert . . . . . tried*—Gilbert tried to keep the patent in force by granting tracts of land to the adventurers in the future colony they might establish in America, that is to say, he gave written promise that so and so is to have so much land in, the future colony in America, encouraging them thus to go out and found colonies. *Assigns*—here it means, those to whom assigned lands, as described above. *Himself*—personally. *Impoverished*—crippled in means, reduced to poverty. *To renew his efforts*—to make new attempts. *And . . . . . efforts*—He was himself so much crippled in means that he could not make new attempts, to fit out another expedition. *Para: 2.* *Pupil*—disciple. *Delighted*—took great delight. *Hazardous adventure*—enterprise full of danger, risky undertaking. *To prosecute*—to carry on. *To . . . . . World*—To go on discovering place after place in America. *Lay . . . . . states*—start founding commonwealths or federations. *Acquire*—gain for good, or permanently. *Immense domains*—huge tracts of country, i.e., enormous territories over which he could exercise dominion. *An easy design*—a plan having no difficulty in it. *Interfere* stand in the way of—*Which . . . . . with*—which would not clash against.

*Page 70.*—*Pursuit of favour*—the course of securing the queen's good-will and liking. *The limit*—the 6 years to which the patent or charter was limited. *Had expired*—had come to an end. *Brother*, i.e., Raleigh. *Equipped*—fitted up. *Squadron*—a number of ships formed in a square. Here it means a number of ships carrying means of fighting. *Happy omens*—signs of

good luck. *Eve*—the day before, shortly before. *Departure*—going away (from England). *Token of regard*—special mark of favour. *Guided*—conducted, lead, directed. *The commander . . . . . lady*—Gilbert got a golden anchor led on by a lady, from Queen Elizabeth, to signify that his expedition was specially favoured by her, and that she was its guardian spirit. *A man of letters*—a literary man, a scholar (Parmenius). *Accompanied*—went with. *Colonised*—turned into colonies or settlements. *But for . . . . . disasters*—if a series of misfortune had not occurred one after another and confounded them. *Deserted*—a military word, meaning, ran away from the post assigned to it. *Under . . . . . disease*—making a false excuse that the men on board suffered from a contagious or catching sickness. *Harbour*—anchorage at Plymouth. *Incensed*—made very angry, annoyed. *Intimidated*—frightened, deprived of courage and spirit. (Note the use of the Figure Alliteration in the two words, both beginning with *I*). *For*—in the direction of, towards. *St. John's*—a fortified sea-port town, capital of Newfoundland. *Entering*—means, entering the harbour of the town. *Summoned*—called authoritatively. *Other strangers*—other people who came from Europe to live there, and were, therefore, strangers in the land. *To witness*—to observe, to see. *Ceremonies*—formal rites. *By which*—by means of performing which (ceremonies). The preposition here denotes a simultaneous means and a fact. *For*—in the name of. *For*—signifies here purpose or benefit. *Pillar*—column. *Arms of England*—herald, i.e., cognisance,—the rampant lion and the unicorn. *Infixed*—fixed on, nailed. *Monument*—a memorial. *In fee*—by a tenure from a feudal lord. *Quit-rent*—a small rent paid by tenants, which leaves them free from all other obligations. *The lands . . . . . quit-rent*—the tracts of land in

St. John's were divided among the fishermen made subjects of the English crown under the feudal system, but freed from all obligations of feudal service, on the understanding that they paid a small rent. *Generally agreed*—most of Gilbert's men were of one mind as regards the opinion. *Made a show of*—showed signs of. *Mineral substance*—metals (especially silver) generally found in mines. *Mineral-man*—miner, one versed in mines and metals. *Of*—belonging to. *Expedition*—the voyage of discovery and conquest undertaken by the squadron. *Religious*—god-fearing. *Saxon*—an Englishman, distinct from the Norman settlers in England. *Protested*—solemnly declared. *On his life*—staking his life in support of what he declared. *On* denotes affirmation. *Silver ore*—silver in a mineral or mixed state. *Abounded*—was plentiful. *Charged*—ordered. *The discovery*—the finding of silver. *Profound Secret*—a deep secret, thoroughly hidden from others' knowledge—*Precious ore*, i.e., the silver. *On board*—on the deck of. The two words together to be treated as a prepositional phrase, governing "*ship*" in the objective case. *Mystery*—secrecy. *Dull*—stupid, thick-witted. *Suspected . . . matter*—had no idea that silver was being carried away.

*Para 3.*—*To preserve*—to keep up, maintain. *Order*—discipline. *Mariners*—(L. *mare*, sea) sailors, seamen. *Infected*—touched with the contagion. *Infected with the vices*—having contracted the vicious habits. *Degraded*—lowered. *Profession*—calling, trade. *Pirates*—sea-robbers. *Perpetually*—ever, always. *Bent*—determined. *Pillaging*—phundering. *Fell in their way*—happened to come before them.

*Page 71.*—*Barks*—ships. (also spelt *barque*.) *Only*—adv: modifying "*vessels*" which by the figure Synecdoche, taking a whole for a part, is made to mean *ships*. *On . . . . . discoveries*—to find out other places. *On*

denotes direction. *Beyond*—on the side of. *Wiscasset*—Sea Geographical Appendix at the end of these Notes. *Crew*—a collective term, meaning the sailors. *Struck*—grounded, the bottom of the vessel struck against the ground or a sunken rock: *Wrecked*—destroyed. *All*—case in apposition with “*minerai-man*” and “*ore*” *Rescue*—save. *Ten tons*—carrying ten tons, one ton being 2240 pounds or about 28 maunds. *Convenient for*—Easy or suitable for the purpose of. *Approaching the coast*—coming near the shore (without striking the ground). *Would not*—did not wish to. *Encountered*—faced. *A . . . resolution*—a, contracted exclamatory expression, meaning it was a determination for loss of all hope of success. *Rough*—boisterous, stormy. *Mariner*—sailor. *Outrageous seas*—wild and violent sea. The plural means portions of the sea tossed with waves. *Frigate*—a small ship, being smaller than a ship and larger than a brig. *Twice as large as*—double the size of. *Long-boat*—the largest boat carried on the deck of a *Merchantman* (—a trading ship). *Ocean sea*—the immense expanses of water on the ocean. *Same*—very. *About*, prep: governing the substantive *twelve* in the obj: case. *Disappeared*—went out of sight, vanished.

*Para: 4.* *Disheartened*—discouraged. *Sad fate*—melancholy death. *Revolved*—planned in his mind. *Milder clime*—more temperate region. *Expelled*—driven out (by the Spaniards). *Readily*—soon, promptly. *Simple*—not complicated, plain. *Drawn*—prepared, written out. *Feudal law*—law governing the feudal system which required military service in return for grants of land. *And with . . . . England*—strictly, in accordance with the Protestant form of the Christian religion, followed in the reformed Church of England. The whole sentence means, the charter which Elizabeth granted Raleigh, required military service from him in return for



the land the Queen granted *him* and which he might find out and plant as an English Colony, and it also strictly laid down the condition that the manners, customs rites and ceremonies of Raleigh's future colony must be of the Protestant form of the Christian religion in the Church of England. *Constituted*—made, created. *A lord proprietary*—a title of Lord conferred for owing property. (The adjective comes after the word it qualifies for denoting a title) *the limited*—endless. *Powers*—the plural (who tract used as a common noun) denotes different kinds of power. *Holding his . . . . . homage*—possessing his lands (in America when he found and possessed them) by becoming the queen's vassal under the feudal system. *And . . . . . rent*—and paying a small, nominal rent. *Extensive region*—large extent of land. *To make grants*—to grant lands under the feudal system—*According to his pleasure*—as he liked and when he liked. *Expectations rose high*—great hopes (of excess) were entertained *Since*—because.—

Page 72.—*Balmy regions*—soothing, i. e., mild and fragrant territories. *The south*—more in the south than before (mid-atlantic part of N. America). *Buoyant* puffed up. *Buoyant with hope*—(whose spirits were) raised with expectation. *Circuitious route*—round about course *Note.* The word *circuitous* as divided in the book is wrong. It should be *cir-cui-tous*, and not *cir-cui-tous*. In other words, it should not have been printed *circui* on one side and *tous* on the other). *By*—by the side of. *A short stay*—staying for a short time. *Drew*—drew (themselves), a transitive used intransitively, by dropping the reflexive object). *Fragrance*—sweet smell. *Delicate garden*—fine garden. *Abounding with*—full of. *Odoriferous*—scent-carrying or bearing sweet smell. *Ranging*—roving or passing along. *Convenient harbour*—anchorage easy to enter. *For*—in the name of. The

prep: carries the same force as before—see notes on page 70.

*Para. 5.*—*Performed*—gone through. *Spot*—exact place. *Inlet*—creek. *Forming . . . . Inlet*—which were arranged round so as to form the Ocracoke Inlet. *From*—owing to. *Formation of the coast* The manner in which the coast has been formed, the configuration of the coast. *Offers*—furnishes, supplies—*secure*—safe. *Roadsteads and harbours*—ports and anchorages. *From . . . . . harbours*—the configuration of the coast was such that it furnished no ports where ships could ride at anchor, protected from the violent storms. *Agitated*—stirred, disturbed. *Gentlest*—extremely mild. *Commanders*—captains. *In raptures*—in ecstasies, in transports of delight. *Seen . . . . . repose*—seen when resting and looking grand. *Gemmed with islands*—studded with islands sparkling like precious stones. *Expanding . . . . . cape*—lying stretched and looking very clear and transparent from one head land to the other. *The regulation . . . . . latitude*—the vegetables growing in that southern latitude between 30° and 40° north of the equator. *Paragons*—equals in perfection. *Luxuriant climbers*—rich and thriving creepers. *Gracefully . . . . . cedars*—threw their beautiful wreaths on the highest cedar trees. *Natural arbours*—bowers formed of their own accord. *Impervious*—impenetrable. *Thit*—so that. *Suns of July*—the sun on any day in July, *Penetrate*—pierce. *Discharge*—firing. *Arquebuse* or *harquebuse*—an old fashioned gun on a forked rest. *Arise*—fly upward. *Shouted*—uttered a loud cry.

*Para. 6.*—*Gentleness*—mild disposition—*Thorny inhabitants*—the red Indians. *In harmony with*—inagreement with, in keeping with. *The gentleness . . . . . scene*—the red Indians who lived there seemed as mild as the beautiful scenery of the place.

*Page 73.*—*The desire of traffic*—the wish to carry on trade, the longing to exchange their things with those of the English. *Their timidity*—the red Indians' fear. *And . . . . welcome*—and the English were received by the Indians as friends. *They*—the English. *Entertained*—received as guests and feasted. *With . . . . hospitality*—with such delicacies and gentle manners as their rustic hosts, the Indians, possessed. *Arcadian*—a proper adj: from Arcadia, mountainous district in Southern Greece. *Guile and treason*—deceit and treachery. *After*—following. *The golden age*—the people of the golden age (Fig: Metonymy). The *golden age* is said to be that first period in the history of man, when everything was as good as gold. *Cares*—anxieties. *To guard*—to take steps or measures of precaution. *Moderate*—temperate, mild. *Cold*—a noun, meaning the cold temperature. *Spontaneously*—of its own accord, without cultivation. *With . . . . . comparison*—with an odd lack of the power which enables one to compare one thing with another. The writer of the account was strangely deficient in his power to institute comparisons, for after likening the red Indians to the people of the golden age, it is an abrupt and faulty antithesis to speak of their wars. *Domestic Disensions*—family quarrels. *Exterminated*—put an end to. *Basest stratagems*—meanest plots. *Practice*—custom. *In the confidence*—when they trusted their hosts. *Was . . . . . bigots*—was not a plan solely invented by obstinate partisans in Europe. There is a general reference here to many of the European nations, like the Borgias, who used to poison those who trusted them. Shakespeare's *Macbeth* is another instance of such treachery. *Solicited*—asked earnestly, entreated. *To engage*—to take part in. *Similar*—like. *Enterprise*—undertaking. *The English . . . . . , enterprise*—The English (who came with Raleigh)

were entreated to take part in a like daring plot (of inviting a number of red Indians to a feast, and then murdering them). *Under promise*—holding out the promise. *Lucrative booty*—great or profitable plunder. *Under . . . . booty*—promising that (if they took part in the plot of inviting the Indians to a feast and then murdering them) they (the English) would secure a large amount of profitable plunder.

Para. 7.—The men who had joined Raleigh's enterprise, *Satisfied*—gratified, quite pleased. *Observing*—noticing. *The general aspect*—view taken as a whole. *Extensive examination*—not looking into things on a large scale. *No . . . . undertaken*—no looking into things on the coast in a large scale was taken in hand. *Explored*—searched, scrutinised with a view to find out things. *And . . . . Indians*—and they learnt certain things by asking questions of the Indians. *The . . . . exactness*—the captains were either too timid or too lazy to examine the land minutely. *Natives*—men born in the wilderness. *Returning*=returned, i.e., the men who had returned, sailing back on the Atlantic. *Glowing descriptions*—coloured or bright accounts, and. *the returning . . . . a summer's sea*—and when they sailed back to England they gave just such bright accounts of the things they had found out as (= which) might be looked for from those who had done nothing more than taken their ships across the still waters of an ocean which is disturbed by no storms in the summer. *Esteemed*—Judged, value. *Signalised*—rendered distinguished. *Enchanting*—charming. *As a memorial*—in memory of. *Her state of life*—her life lived as a maiden or virgin (not married.) *Named them*—called them by the name of.

## Appendix IV

### 1, & 2.—HISTORICAL AND BIOGRAPHICAL.

*Elizabeth* Queen of England, the daughter of Henry VIII and Anne Boleyn, was born 7th September 1533. She shared her mother's disgrace, and was declared illegitimate. In the reign of Edward VI, she appeared at court, and having avowed herself a Protestant, was looked upon as the hope of the Protestant party. In the reign of bloody Mary, although she conformed to Papistry, she suffered under the royal displeasure. Accused of being concerned in the plot of Sir Thomas Wyatt, she was sent to the Tower in 1554, and would have probably been beheaded but for the fear of a Protestant rising. On her release she was transferred to Woodstock, and then allowed to remain in her residence, Hertfordshire, till the death of Mary, 17th November 1558, when she ascended the throne. The following are the outstanding features of her reign.

1. The reformed church of England was re-established and confirmed in the Protestant religion.

2. She supported by money the Protestants struggling in France, in the Netherlands, and in Scotland.

3. Her rival, Mary, Queen of Scots, being brought into collision with the Scottish nation, fled to England, and was imprisoned by her. It ended in the execution of Mary in 1587. The destruction of the Armada in 1588 was the greatest event of her reign.

4. From her reign began the material prosperity, naval power, the commercial activity, and the literary glory of England.

5. Great seamen like Drake, Hawkins, Frobisher, and Raleigh, made England the mistress of the seas.

6. The reign of Elizabeth saw the fulness of the literary glory of Sidney and Spenser, the death of Marlowe and the rise of Shakespeare.

7. What grew into the East India Company obtained its charter, and Birmingham, Manchester, and Sheffield became seats of manufactures.

She died in her seventieth year, having refused to be married all her life. Her reign closed on March 24, 1603.

*Sir Walter Raleigh* was born in 1552, educated in Oxford and went to serve his'prenticeship in arms among the Huguenots. After six years stay in France, he sailed in 1578 with his half-brother, Sir Humphrey Gilbert in search of the "Unknown Goal" in America. On his return he went to Ireland, and tried to assist in putting down the revolt there. He returned from thence, entered court life, and soon became a great favourite of Elizabeth's, under his patron Leicester. The story of his expedition to explore and colonise the coast to the north of Florida, and the bestowal by the Queen of the name Virginia on the region discovered there, is given in the text of the lesson. He was knighted about this time (1585). He passed through various fortunes in Elizabeth's reign, and lived till James I ascended the throne. Then began his troubles and confinement in the Tower for thirteen years, at the end of which he was let go unpardoned in 1616, and sailed for the last time Westward Ho! in quest of a Guiana gold-mine. The expedition was a miserable failure from beginning to end. He returned home, as he had promised the king he would, was tempted by his kinsman treacherously, to fly to France, arrested on the way and imprisoned once more in the Tower. The old charge of his having conspired with Spain against the English king was revived, and he died bravely and cheerfully on the scaffold in 1618. With him ended the Elizabethan

heroes. Raleigh had all the making of a great soldier, statesman, and navigator, but hardly of the three combined, although to effect this combination was his highest ambition. His possible achievements may be inferred from what he actually did. His unfinished '*History of the World*' (1614) was the admiration of Cromwell and Hampden. His '*Truth of the Fight about the Isles of the Azores*' (1591) is known to many now through Tennyson's '*Revenge*' (1878), and of his poems, the '*Lie*' is no mean testimony to his poetical powers. He was greatly in advance of his time. But he chiefly deserves our praise as the planter of England's earliest colony. Two of the products he introduced from Virginia, namely, potatoes and tobacco will always remain associated with his great name.

*Sir Humphrey Gilbert* half-brother of Raleigh, was born in 1539; educated at Eton and Oxford, and adopting the profession of arms, rendered distinguished service in the Irish wars, for which Elizabeth knighted him. He was a member of the Parliament in 1571. In 1576 he wrote a treatise on the N. W. Passage to India. In 1578, as related in the text, he obtained a charter from Elizabeth, and in 1579 he sailed for discovery and conquest in America. But this expedition was a failure. In 1583 he organised another expedition of five vessels and 260 men, which proved disastrous. How he reached Newfoundland and took possession of it in the Queen's name is given in the lesson. Sailing Southward he lost the largest of his ships off Cape Breton. On the 9th September, in the midst of a storm, he 'sitting abaft with a book in his hand,' more than once exclaimed 'We are as near to heaven by sea as by land'. At midnight of the same day, the frigate *Squirrel* went down with all on board, and thus ended the life of a conspicuously brilliant and chivalrous figure in an age renowned for brilliance and chivalry. Gilbert's

name, like his step brother Raleigh's is to be remembered as taking a prominent part in laying the foundations of English colonisation in America.

*Sir Francis Drake*, one of the greatest of English sailors, was born in Devonshire, like Gilbert and Raleigh, in 1514. He went to sea when he was very young. Being then fired by the exploits of his patron, Sir John Hawkins, he joined him in an ill-fated expedition to the Spanish Main. From there he returned in poverty, and vowed revenge to Spain for which he nursed an inflexible hatred to the day of his death. He then made several cruises in the West Indies, and became a terror to Spain. In 1577 he sailed in the *Pelican* for S. America, passed the straits of Magellan, till then untraversed by Englishmen, and plundered and destroyed all along the coasts of Chili and Peru, sacked various posts, and returned home with spoils in value about £500,000, in 1579. This voyage had a great moral effect, as it emboldened Englishmen for the coming struggle with Spain. In 1585—86, he repeated his plundering expedition, doing considerable damage to Spanish possessions in Santiago, Carthagená and San Domingo. In 1587 when the Armada was about to sail, Drake entered Cadiz harbour and burnt a large number of storeships, destroyed four large men of war, and "sing'd the Spanish King's beard" to such good purpose that it delayed the sailing of the Armada for a whole year. In 1588, as vice-admiral under Howard, he drove back the Armada. In a subsequent expedition to the W. Indies, he died of a disease which broke out among his men, in 1595. More than any other man, Drake was the founder of England's naval greatness, and the sincerity of this great navigator's patriotism was shown in the readiness with which he sacrificed his wealth to aid in repelling the Armada. He was chaste in his life, just in his dealings, true of his word, merciful to his subordinates, and



hated nothing so much as idleness, contemning danger, and refusing no toil.

*Coligny* or *Colignde*, *Gaspardi*, younger son of the Marshal of France, himself admiral of France, a great soldier, and a leader of the Huguenots, was born in 1517. He distinguished himself during the reigns of Francis I, and Henri II. He succeeded Conde in the leadership of the Huguenots, and fought bravely at various battles for them, succeeding in the end in securing an advantageous peace for his party in 1570. After an attempt had been made privately to assassinate him, he perished in the Massacre of St. Bartholomew, August 24, 1572.

*Huguenots* is the name by which those who accepted the Reformed (Protestant) faith in France, became generally known in the 16th century. It is supposed to have been derived from one Protestant Hugues. The history of the Huguenots is the history of the French Protestant Church which suffered various persecutions during the reigns of Francois I, Henri II, Francois II and Charles IX. In 1567-68 the Huguenots were led by Conde and Coligny, till a peace on favourable terms was secured by the latter in 1570. Then followed the fearful massacre of the Huguenots on St. Bartholomew's Day, a piece of treachery, as horrible as those that used to be committed by the red Indians. In spite of all this, the French Protestants flourished.

*Frobisher*, *Sir Martin*, the first famous English navigator who devoted himself to the Search for a N. W. passage from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and to India, was born about the middle of the 16th century. Respecting the discovery of the passage, he considered that "it was the only thing of the world that was left yet undone whereby a notable mind might be made famous and fortunate. He obtained the patronage of Dudley, earl of Warwick, and was enabled to fit out a squadron of three

vessels, whose united burden was under 70 tons, and set sail 8th June 1576. As the expedition passed Greenwich Queen Elizabeth bade the mariners farewell "by shaking her hand at them out of the windows." Passing the S. coast of Greenland, he crossed to Labrador, and discovered the inlet which still bears his name. Five of his sailors going ashore against orders were carried off by the natives and never heard of any more. After collecting a quantity of mica, which was said to contain a large quantity of gold, Frobisher set sail for England, and arrived in October. A second and a third voyage was undertaken in 1577 and 1588 respectively, but without noteworthy results. He died at Plymouth, 7th November 1594, of a wound received at an attack on Brest.

Q.—What do you know of Bancroft from whose writings this lesson has been extracted?

*George Bancroft*, a leading American historian, was born 3rd October 1800, near Worcester, Massachusetts, being the son of Dr. Aaron Bancroft, a Unitarian minister, and author of a *Life of George Washington*, *Sermons on the Doctrines of the Gospel &c.* George Bancroft studied at Harvard College; went from there to Gottingen and Berlin, coming in contact with Hegel, Goethe, and a number of other German celebrities. On returning to America, he threw himself into historical literature and politics, filling the offices of Secretary to the Navy, and Ambassador Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary to to England. He wrote several historical works, which in the end he incorporated in his *History of America*, one of the best written, and at the same time, most substantial and accurate historical works of the present time. It has been translated into several European languages.

Q.—Show briefly how the first settlements founded by Gilbert and Raleigh "have since grown into the United States of N. America."

A.—The original United States were colonies established by settlers chiefly from the British Isles, at different times between 1583, when Newfoundland was taken possession of by Sir Humphrey Gilbert, and 1732. They continued subject to England till 1776, when, in consequence of taxes imposed without their consent, they declared themselves independent. General Washington was made their Commander-in-Chief, and after a war of nearly seven years their independence was acknowledged by Britain in 1782. In 1787 the present form of Republican government was adopted, and in the following year Washington was elected the first President of the Republic. In 1861 several of the Southern States tried to separate themselves from the Union in order to maintain slavery; but after a severe struggle, known as the American Civil War in history, they were subdued, and slavery was abolished 1865. The Americans are, therefore, called 'cousins' by the English.

### 3—GEOGRAPHICAL.

Q.—Furnish a list of the Geographical names in the order they occur in the lesson, and give a short account of each.

A.—*Labrador, Newfoundland (with St. John's), Hungary the, United States, Plymouth, Wiscasset, Falmouth, Canaries, West Indies, Carolina, Wocoken, Ocracoke, Roanoke, Secotan, Pamlico and Albemarle Sound.*

1. *Labrador.*—The most northern portion of N. America. For administrative purposes, it is now considered part of the colony of Newfoundland. It lies in the N. E. of Canada, between Hudson's Bay and the Atlantic. The country is first bound and the climate is chilly.

2. *Newfoundland*.—It is a large rugged island on the east of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. One Sebastian cabot a venetian in the employ of Henry VII discovered it in 1497. *St. John's* is its capital, in the south-east, and has a fine harbour. This is where Gilbert landed in 1583.

3. *Hungary*.—(land of the Magyars') with Austria forms the Austro-Hungarian empire. It consists now of Transylvania, Croatia, Slavonia, and the military frontier. The emperor of Austria is called king of Hungary in all public acts. It had many schools, libraries and scholars at the time mentioned in the text.

4. *The United States*.—These are bounded on the north by British America, and on the south by Mexico, and extend from the Atlantic on the east to the Pacific on the west. It consists of 46 states and 4 territories. For the rest, see the last answer in the Historical and Biographical Appendix.

5. *Plymouth*.—It is the great south-western port of England, in Devonshire. The inhabitants of the place call it 'These Towns,' as it is in reality three distinct towns, under separate local governments. It is famous for being one of England's great naval stations. The Eddystone Lighthouse stands on the extreme verge of the horizon in the south.

6. *Wiscasset* is a town in the east coast of Maine, one of the six new England States of the United States. Most of the names of this State are, like Wiscasset, red Indian names. When Gilbert reached this point in his voyage southward from St. John's in New found land and descended a little beyond Wiscasset, he had reached  $44^{\circ}$  north of the Equator, and perhaps a little further south.

7. *Falmouth*.—A town of Cornwall, at the mouth of the Fal, and formerly a station for sailing from, for the south of Europe and the West Indies. The harbour here is of unusual depth and capacity. Henry VIII built two

castles here to defend the harbour and Elizabeth further strengthened it.

8. *Canaries*.—A group of beautiful islands, south-west of west of Morocco, (N. W. Africa,) in the possession of Spain. Teneriffe is the largest of these islands. Raleigh in his expedition sailed south-ward from England, instead of going due west, and described nearly three parts of a circle through Canaries and the West Indies before he reached the coast of Virginia.

9. *West Indies* consist of several groups of islands in the caribbean Sea, and extend in a double curve from Florida in N. America, to the mouths of the Orinoco in S. America. The chief of these are the Bahamas, the Virgin Islands, the Leeward Islands, the Windward Islands, Cuba, Hayti, Jamaica and Porto Rico.

10. *Carolina* consists of N. and S. Carolina, both belonging to the original 13 States of the Union, since called the United States. It is bounded on the N. by Virginia, on the S. by Georgia, on the W. by Tennessee; and on the east by the Atlantic. It was first colonised in 1587.

11. *Wococken*.—Nothing more is known of this island than what is mentioned in the lesson, namely, it is the southern most in the group which forms Ocracoke Inlet.

12. *Ocracoke Inlet*.—An Inlet of N. Carolina, forming a passage into Pamlico Sound, 22 miles south-west of Cape Hatteras.

13. *Roanoke* a small isle near the east coast of N. Carolina. This and *Secotan* (14) were at the time occupied by the red Indians. No trace of Secotan can be found in any modern map or geography.

15 and 16 *Pamlico* and *Albemarle* are Sounds in name, but in reality they are sheets of shallow water, not more than 14 feet at ebb tide, on the east coast of

N. Carolina and separated from the Atlantic by low, sandy islands, having on each side dangerous shoals which render navigation difficult. Pamlico is 80 miles long, and 10 to 30 miles broad.

#### 4.—EXPLANATORY.

Q.—Write a paragraph-wise summary of the whole lesson.

A.—*Introduction*.—Great English navigators like Drake and Hawkins were occupied with plundering the Spaniards in S. America. But wiser seamen like Gilbert and Raleigh did their best to establish English settlements in N. America. The United States thus owe their origin to these early English colonies.

1.—Sir H. Gilbert received a charter from Queen Elizabeth in 1578 to found any colony he could, in America, so long as he did not forcibly take possession of territories already under Christian princes. This charter was granted for six years, after which it would become null and void if within that time he failed to make use of it. He took one year to make his preparations, and after a good deal of petty quarrels and disagreements, he sailed with a few trusted friends and his step-brother Raleigh in 1579. The expedition proved a failure.

A second expedition was got ready with Raleigh's help and encouragement. In 1583 Gilbert sailed again with better hopes of success, the Queen personally cheering the party by presenting their leader with a token of her goodwill, viz., the golden image of a lady guiding an anchor of the same metal. Raleigh remained behind this time to win favour with the Queen. In spite of desertion on the part of the captain of the largest ship of the expedition, Gilbert pursued his course, till, in August he touched St. John's the capital of Newfoundland, and took possession

of the whole island in the name of Elizabeth, and in the presence of all the people present on the occasion, including the Spaniards and the Portuguese, who had hitherto claimed to be the sole possessors of America. Gilbert secured much silver in the island and carried it secretly on board his own ship.

The sailors were an unmanageable lot of robbers and pirates in their greed for plunder, and Gilbert finding it hard to curb them, sacrificed one of his vessels and sailed southward to visit the coast of the United States. He had sailed a little beyond 44° north of the Equator, when he lost the largest of his ships, through the carelessness of the unruly crew, and nearly a hundred hands with it. This involved the loss of Parmenius, the historian-designate of the expedition, as well as all the silver he had brought from St. John's. This was, however, the least of the calamities that over-took him, for being obliged now to sail in a frigate, the Atlantic proved too rough for his voyage home, and he perished in the attempt to cross the ocean at that stormy season of the year.

But Raleigh was far from being disheartened by Gilbert's failure and death. He obtained another charter from Queen Elizabeth in 1584 on nearly the same terms as his half brother, with this difference, however, that he managed to secure almost unlimited power for himself from the Queen, being invested with authority to make and enforce laws in his own colony, and make grants as he pleased. He planned to establish his settlement further south than his step brother had done, choosing in his mind the temperate south-east coast of the United States from which the French Protestants had been driven out by the Roman Catholic Spaniards. He made a circuitous voyage and reached the shores of Carolina by way of the Canaries and the islands of the West Indies. They arrived in July when the land was fragrant with lowers, and having

coasted for 120 miles, he took possession of the land in the name of the Queen of England, as his half-brother had done before him.

The island of Wocoken was the place where he performed the ceremony of taking possession. The shores of N. Carolina, difficult of navigation at other times of the year, was not only perfectly safe now, but the weather was so mild and gentle, the Scenery around so charming, the vegetation and birds so delightfully refreshing and lively that they all felt rapturously happy.

The red Indians inhabiting the place were equally gentle and tractable. The English adventurers were feasted and hospitably treated by the Indians whom they described as most mild, loving and faithful, full of innocence and trustfulness. Nevertheless, they found out afterwards that among themselves, they were as bad, plotting, and murderous as many of the European nations.

Raleigh's party did not do much exploring. They were satisfied with what they saw in a general way. Beyond examining one or two places, like Pamlico and Roanoke island, they proceeded no further. After picking up some stray information from the Indians, and carrying away two natives from among them, as specimens of the people inhabiting that part of the world, they reached England in September, and gave a highly coloured account of their expedition. Queen Elizabeth was delighted with Raleigh's success, and thinking the discovery and possession of this new region in N. America as an event which distinguished her reign, she named it 'Virginia,' in memory of her unmarried state of life.

Q.—Explain the following in clear and simple language :—

(a) A lord proprietary, (p. 71, line 29).

(b) Holding his territories by homage and an inconsiderable rent (same page : line 30).



- (c) Two natives of the wilderness, (p. 73, line 27).
  - (d) Seen in the magnificence of repose (p. 72 line 22).
  - (e) Expanding in the clearest transparency from cape to cape (same page, line 23).
  - (f) They entered the first convenient harbour (p. 72, line 11).
  - (g) "More outrageous seas," (page 71, line 16).
  - (h) The ocean sea (same page, line 18).
  - (i) The lands.....quit-rent, p. 70, lines 19 and 20).
  - (j) Gilbert.....alive (page 69, line 24).
  - (k) Free.....immortal, (page 69, lines 3—7).
- A.—(a) The titled owner of a territory by virtue of being a man of property.
- (b) Being the possessor of his landed estate, because he took the feudal oath of a vassal and paid a nominal (small) rent.
  - (c) Two men (taken) from the prairies where they were born.
  - (d) (The ocean) looking grand as it rested undisturbed by any wind,
  - (e) And stretching clear from one headland near Pamlico Sound to the other head land near Albmarle Sound, without any haze in between to obscure the view. It also means,—specially here,—the ocean lay stretched out from one headland to another, looking so clear that one could see through almost from top to bottom. (*Note*—Recent observations have shown that the larger the amount of salt in ocean water, the greater is its transparency).
  - (f) They entered the first port which they found easy to enter.

- (g) Portions of the (Atlantic) ocean more violently tossed by storm (*Note*—This is an expression quoted from the account given most probably by the crew of the sole surviving *Hind*, and means, they found portions of the Atlantic so violently shaken by the storm that they had never seen their like before.
- (h) It is a seaman's phrase, meaning, the *swell* of the ocean, caused by immense waves.
- (i) The lands were portioned out among the fishermen in accordance with the *tenure laws of the feudal system*, on this understanding that they must pay a (small nominal) rent which would cancel their obligations to render military service to their feudal overlord. (*Note*—Under the feudal system, lands were divided into two classes: *allodum* and *free-simple* or lands held *in fee*. The former are the royal domains, and the latter are those held by tenure of some superior lord.
- (j) Gilbert made grants of the land yet to be discovered and taken possession of, and by this means he tried not to let the character become a dead letter, i.e., he tried thus to keep the charter in operation.
- (k) Being constant-minded as he was fearless, he never swerved from the path of glory or of rectitude,—never turned aside from serving his queen, simply because such a course was perilous; for he knew that danger, however serious, could at the worst bring on death which no man can avoid, but that the oblivion of death can be avoided by dying in an honourable cause, the fame of which lives for ever.

## 5—GRAMMATICAL.

Q.—Give the required parsing of the following words.—Page 68 *chief* (line 20). *Since* (23) & *Tending* (26). Page 69.—*Censured* (line 2.) *Free* (3). *To obtain* (7). *To be* (9). *Possession and jurisdiction* (12 and 14). *Contributing* (17). *Step-brother, Walter Raleigh* (22). *To renew* (27). *Appeared* (30) and *Design* (31). Page (70).—*As* (5). *But* (8). *Days* (9). *To witness* (16). *Saxon* (23). *To keep, Secret* (24). *To preserve* (28). *No, better* (30) and *Pillaging* (31). Page (71).—*Now* (1). *Only* (1). *To visit* (2). *Nearly, A, Hundred, men* (6). *Historian* (9). *To hasten* (10). *Convenient* (12). *Frigate, Not, More, Than, Twice, As, Large, As, Longboat* (18). *Too, Small, Bark, To pass, Through, Ocean* (19). *Twelve, O'clock* (21). *Any* (22). *Ample* (27). *That* (28). *As, Professed* (30). *Lord* (31). *Hold-ing* (32). *Rent, Possessing* (33) and *To make* (34). PAGE 72.—*To be colonised* (1). *Opposite, Shores* (7). *As* (8). *Southernmost* (15). *Forming* (16) *Gemmed* (23). *Expanding* (23). *And That* (28). PAGE 73.—*Such, as* (6). *To gather* (8) *To guard* (7). *To murder* (14). *Exclusively* (15). *To engage* (17), *Gathered* (23). *To survey* (24). *Having made, But* (25). *Accompanied* (26). *Returning* (28). *As* (29). *No, more, Sail* (30). *Signalised* (32). *As* (33) and *Virginia* (34).

A.—PAGE 68.—*Chief*—adj. of quality not admitting of comparison, used predicatively, "qualifying" "*Gilbert*" and "*Raleigh*", and also used as subjective complement "*were*". *Since*—adv. of time, modifying "*have grown*." *Finding*—pres. impf. trans. Gerund, pacing for its object, "*gold*," and object of the prep. "*of*".

Page 69.—*Censured*—Past part, predicating "*He*" in the beginning of the sentence. *Free*—adj. of quality,

pos. deg., qualifg "him" *alike* (line 4.)—Adv. modifg. "Free" *to obtain*—present of the simple or noun infinitive, case in apposition with "It". *To be*—pres. of the ger. inf., denoting purpose, used as an adj. qualifg. "patent." *Possession* and *jurisdiction*—both nouns in the nominative cases, subjects severally to the verb "was promised" understood. *Contributing*—pres. impf. participle, predicating "Gilbert." *Step-brother*—(= stepping-brother: a gerund + a noun) an unrelated or juxtapositional compound noun, case absolute (joined to the participle "being" understood). W. Raleigh—case in apposition with "step-brother." *To renew*—pres. of the Gerund: inf. denoting purpose, used as an adv., modifg. the past part: "impoverished." *Appeared*—intrans. verb of incomplete predication, having "design" for its subjective complement, and agreeing with its subjects the simple or noun infinitives "*To prosecute*," "*(to) lay*" and "*(to) acquire*." *Design*—same as the said noun infinitives.

Page 70.—*As*—prep., governing "token" in the obj. case *But*—prep., governing the phrase "for.....disasters" in the obj. case. *Days*—Adverbial object of time. *To witness*—Present of the gerundial infinitive denoting purpose (Trans: having for its object ceremonies, used as an adverb modifying "summoned." *Saxon*—adjective here used as a proper noun, same case as "mineral man". *To keep*—Present of the simple infinitive (Trans: having for its object "discovery") retained object of the dative transitive verb "was charged" (in the passive voice). *Secret*—adjective used as a noun, Objective complement or Factitive object of "to keep." *To Preserve*—Present of the simple infinitive (Trans: having for its object "order") case in opposition with "it". *No*—Adverb modifying "better." *Better*—Adjective of quality, comparative degree, qualifying "many". *Pillaging*—Gerund

(Trans: having for its object the noun clause "whatever .....way.") in the objective case governed by the prep: upon."

*Page 71*—*Now*—Adverb of time, modifying "being" understood. *Only*—Adverb, modifying the phrase "in three vessels" *To visit*—Present of the simple infinitive trans: leaving for its obj: "coast"), obj: of intending" *Nearly*—adv: of extent modifg: the expression or phrase "a hundred men." *A*—indef: dem:, adj:, pointing out hundred. *Hundred*—adj: of number used as a collective noun or a noun of multitude in the nominative case, subject to the verb "perished") which may be taken in the sing: or plural number as the subj: "hundred" is taken as a collective noun or a noun of multitude). *Men*—object of the prep: "of" understood before it *Historians*—Subjective complement of "should have been," and same case as "who" *To hasten*—pres: of the noun inf: case in apposition with "It." *Convenient*—adj: of quality, pos: deg: pred: use subj: complement (jointly with bark,) of being understood after *Squirrel* which it qualifies. *Frigate*—subj: to the verb was wrecked., *Not*—negative adverb, modifg: "more. *More*—adj: of quantity in the comp: deg: predicative use, subjective complement of "being" understood, and qualify: frigate". *Than*—Subordinative conj: of comparison, introducing the second term of comparison "twice as large". *Twice*—multiplicative adv: modifg: the adj: "large". *As* adv: of extent, modifg: "large". *Large*—adj: &c., subjective complement of "being" understood after "frigate", and qualifying it. *As*—same as the first "as", modify: "is" understood after "long—boat" which is subject to the same verb. *Two*—adv: of degree. modifg: "small". *Small*—qualifies "bark". *Bark*—subjective complement of "being" understood after "frigate", and same case with it. *To pass*—pres: of the gerund: inf:

of purpose, used as an adj.; qualifg: "bark". *Through* prep.; governing "sea" in the obj: case. *Ocean*—noun used as an adj., qualify. "Sea." *Twelve*—substantive in the objective case governed by the prep. "about" *O'clock*=of clock, *o'* being therefore a disguised proposition, governing "clock" in the objective case. *Any*—indef. numeral pronoun in the sing. no., nom-case, subject to the verb "was seen." *Ample* (meaning *abundantly sufficient*)—adj. qualify. "patent." *That*—(def.) dem. pronoun, nom. case, subject to the verb "was" understood after it. *As*—adv. of manner, modifg. the participle "professed" which predicates "faith." *Lord*—subjective complement of "was constituted," same case as Raleigh." *Holding* and *possessing*—pres imperf. participles, predicating "Raleigh." *Rent*—object of the prep. "by" "*To make*"—pres. of the gerund: inf. denoting purpose, used as an adj., qualifg. "power."

Page 72.—*To be colonised*—pres. of the gerundial infinitive denoting purpose, used adverbially as subj. complement of the verb "was" which it modifies. *Opposite*—adjective used predicatively, qualifg. "they." *Shores*—noun in the obj. case, governed by the prep. "to" understood before it, or, according to some, governed by the adj. "opposite" carrying the force of trans. verb. *As*—adv. modify the conj. "if", or, "*as if*" together a phrase conjunction of the subordinate class, introducing the adv. clause after it. Another way of parsing "*as*," is to suppose it a subord. conj. of extent, introducing an adv. clause as (*the fragrance would be*) understood after it. *Southernmost*—substantive in the sing. no.: same case as, or, case in opposition with (both being possible here) "island," the prep. *of* after which carries the force of *apposition* and means *namely-forming*—pres. imperf. part. predicating "islands." *Gemmed*—parse it either as an adj. or a past part. (both being possible), qualifg. or

predicating (as the case chosen) "ocean." *Expanding*—predicates "ocean." *That*—subordinative conjunction of effect, introducing the adv. clause after it.

*Page 73*—*Such*—dem. pronoun in the plural no.; subjective complement of "were," and same case as "people." *As*—relative pronoun (= *who*), having for its antecedent "such," nom. case, subject to the verb "lived." *To guard*—pres. of the noun inf. in the obj. case, governed by the prep. "but" (= *except*). *To gather*—parsing same as "to guard." *To murder*—pres. of the gerund. inf. denoting purpose, used as an adj. qualif. the gerund "inviting." *Exclusively*—adv. modifyg. "was." *To engage*—pres. of the noun inf., retained object the dative trans. verb "were solicited" in the passive voice. *Gathered*—(= *was gathered*) past participle, subjective complement of "was" understood before it, predicating "information." *To survey*—gerundial inf. denoting purpose, used as an adj. qualify. "activity." *Having made*—perf. part. predicating "they." *But*—(= *only*) adv. modifyg. the perf. part "having made." *Accompanied*—past part. predicating "they" and used as subjective complement of "arrived." *Returning*—pres. part. used attributively, qualify. "voyagers." *As*—(= *which*) rel. pronoun having for its antecedent "descriptions," plural no.; nom. case, subject to the verb "might be expected." *No*—negative adv. modifyg. "more" which is adv. of quantity, modifyg. "had done," or, parse "no" as an adj. qualify. "more" which may also be passed as a substantive in the obj. case, governed by the trans. verb "had done." *Sail*—noun inf. in the obj. case, governed by the prep. "than." *Signalised*—past participle predicating "reign," and also used as objective complement of the factitive trans. verb "esteemed." *As*—prep. governing "memorial" in the obj. case. *Virginia* direct object of the dative transitive verb "named."

Q.—Give a detailed analysis of the following sentences :—

- (1) Unsuccessful.....North America, (page 68, lines 5, 6, 7, 8.)
- (2) To the people.....legislative authority, (page 69, lines, 10—16.)
- (3) It was generally.....abounded, (page 70, lines 20—23.)
- (4) The little frigate.....wrecked, page 71, lines 16—19.)
- (5) The vegetation.....could penetrate, (page 72, lines, 24—29.)
- (6) And yet it was.....Secotan, (page 73, lines 9—16.)





Tham is aqumpe quis auo pum 'cent'

153

Th

The clause.	Kind of clause.	Connective.	Subject.
-It was.....agreed ...	Principal clause ...	Nil	It
-That.....substance ...	Nonn clause to A. case in apposition with "it."	That	the mountains
-(And) the mineral-man... .....on his life.	Sami as A. in cumulative coordination with it.	and	The mineral-man

-That silver.....abounded	Noun, clause to C., object of " <i>pro-tested</i> ".	That	One
---------------------------	--	------	-----

*Note.*—It is a mixed sentence, containing more than one (two) Principal clause

The little frigate not more .....as large was nearly wrecked, too small.....year.	Principal clause ...	Nil	The frigate
As the long-boat..... nerchant-man.	Adverb cl : of comparison to A. Modifying the a'ij: " <i>large</i> ".	As	the long-boat

*Note.*— It is a complex sentence, containing one principal c





## 6.—GENERAL AND MISCELLANEOUS.

Q.—Why are Englishmen striving to plant colonies in the New World called wiser and nobler than Drake and others ?

A.—Because they sought the greatness of their country, and tried to secure the permanent good of their nation, instead of satisfying their own personal greed and their individual vanity.

Q.—Say how men like Gilbert and Raleigh were unsuccessful, and yet through their efforts the first settlements now grown into the United States were founded.

A.—Personally they failed to do anything more than discover some regions and formally take possession of them in their sovereign's name. Gilbert perished on his voyage home. Raleigh practically did nothing after his return. But their example, adventurous spirit and enthusiasm in the cause of their country affected others and moved them to follow their lead.

Q.—How was Gilbert's judgment sounder and his knowledge better ?

A.—He possessed better knowledge of Labrador, and, therefore, did not, like Frobisher, hope to find gold there, thus avoiding the error which the latter committed. His far-sighted estimate of the future was more correct, because he considered it far more beneficial for England to plant colonies in the New World than go there only in quest of a quantity of gold.

Q.—Expand the meaning of "*healthy plans*."

A.—It is a metaphorical expression. "Healthy" is opposed to "diseased" or that which has the germs of disease in it. The phrase, therefore, means that his plans

for founding colonies, as distinguished from finding gold, had in them the elements of future prosperity and happiness for Englishmen.

Q.—Distinguish between the following pairs of synonyms:—*liberty*, and *freedom*; *censure* and *blame*; *ignorance* and *stupidity*; *peril* and *danger*; *fame* and *renown*.

A.—*Liberty* implies previous restraint, but *freedom* does not. *Censure* is to accuse and to punish, *blame* is to find fault with more or less severely. We *blame* ourselves and also others, but we can *censure* only others. *Ignorance* is want of knowledge, and does not imply reproach, but *stupidity* does, for inspite of knowledge, it denotes defective understanding. *Peril* is distant and extraordinary *danger*, and *danger* is loss of some kind, bodily, personal or otherwise, met with even if we do not go out of our way, whereas we have to go out of our way to meet perils. *Fame* is a report of some excellence, and *renown* is the fame of some brilliant personal exploits or achievements.

Q.—What is the difference between a *step-brother* and a *half-brother*? Illustrate your answer—

A.—*Half-brothers* are those who have *half the parents*, i.e., one parent (either father or mother) in common; a *step-brother* is one who has *stepped into a brother's place*, that is, brothers who have neither parents in common. For example, Gilbert's mother married twice. By her first husband she had Gilbert. When she married Raleigh's father afterwards, and had Raleigh by her second husband, Gilbert and Raleigh became half-brothers, having their mother in common. If, however, when Raleigh's father, being a widower, married Gilbert's mother, he had already had Raleigh born to him by his previous wife, then Gilbert and Raleigh would be step-brothers, as then they would have

neither father nor mother in common. Notice that Bancroft from whose writings the lesson is extracted calls them "*step-brothers*," while the editor (Green) calls them "*half-brothers*" in his foot-note. It is difficult to say, who is right. Probably Green is more accurate.

Q.—What is the force or meaning conveyed by *of* in the following :—(1) Sincerity *of* his piety. (2) The fame *of* virtue. (3) The rights *of* Englishmen. (4) 200 leagues *of* his settlement. (5) A few *of* his assured friends. (6) Grants *of* land.

A.—(1) Attributive force. (2) Cause. (3) Possessive force arising out of the partitive force. (4) It means *from*. (5) Partitive force. (6) Adjectival force; (=lauded (adj.) grants.

Q.—Write down all the synonyms of *abandon*, and distinguish them from one another.

A.—*Renounce*, *relinquish*, *leave*, *desert*, *forsake* and *quit*. We *abandon* things for ever and altogether. We *renounce* or give up something formally and publicly, and even ceremonially. We *relinquish* sorrowfully when we are forced to do so against our will. We *leave* persons or things for a time and may come back to them. *Desert* and *forsake* imply blame or fault in those who act thus towards others. We *quit* things or places or spots and return to them no more. e. g., John, *left* his house, intending to *quit* it, and *relinquish* all claims thereon, *deserting* his wife, *forsaking* his children, *abandoning* his wealth, and *renouncing* all comfort.

Q.—Why did Raleigh delight in hazardous adventure and why is he called the "pupil of Coligny" in connection with this?

A.—Raleigh went to France after he left college, and served his apprenticeship in arms under the French general Coligny who was then fighting the battle of the French Protestants against the French Emperors. The



times were dangerous, and men lived in perpetual peril. Raleigh got accustomed to these risks, and took pleasure afterwards in following a course involving hazards. He is called here the pupil of Coligny (Fig. of Speech. (*Autonomasia*) as under the latter he learnt to love a hazardous life.

Q.—What is the special meaning conveyed by putting the demonstrative adjective “*other*” before “strangers” on page 70, line 15, ?

A.—It implies that the Spaniards and the Portuguese in St. John’s were as much strangers there as any others, denying thereby their absurd claim that all the New World belonged to them.

Q.—Why is the compound noun “mineral-man” used on the same page, instead of the word *mineralist* or *mineralogist* ?

A.—The word *mineralist* means one versed or skilled in mines and minerals. The word *mineralogist* signifies a man learned in the science of mines and minerals. Neither of these words would have served the purpose, as the Saxon who accompanied the expedition was neither a *mineralist*, nor a *mineralogist*, but simply a *miner*, most probably from Cornwall, who had picked up some practical knowledge about mines and minerals, and was, therefore, only fit to be called a “mineral-man.”

Q.—Distinguish between *Coast* and *Shore*, *Shade* and *Shadow Traffic*, *Trade* and *Commerce*.

A.—*Coast* is edge of the land next to the sea. It is used only with reference to the sea, and never applied to the banks of a river. *Shore* is the land near the sea or some large river. (Note—The sea-shore is divided into three portions: (1) That which the sea just reaches in storms and high tides, but which it never covers. (2) That which is covered in high tides but is dry at other times. (3) That on the lowest level, and always covered

'with water.)—*Shade* is the dark space from which the light, and (incidentally) heat or glare has been cut off. *Shadow* is the shape or form of the object which intercepts the light and heat. The leading idea in *trade* is that of carrying on business for purposes of gain. The other two are but *modes* of trade. *Commerce* is a *mode* of trade by exchange, carried on always between countries; *trade* is either within or without the country. *Traffic* is a sort of personal *trade*, sending things from hand to hand.

Q.—Write brief notes on "*the golden age*" and "Arcadian hospitality."

A.—"The golden age" is the best age; as the golden age of innocence and simplicity here referred to; the golden age of literature, and so on. Generally five ages have been named. (1) The *golden* or patriarchal age, (2) The *silver* or voluptuous age. (3) The *brass* or warlike age. (4) The *heroic* or renaissance age. (5) The *iron* or present age. "Arcadian hospitality" means hospitality or the entertainment of guests in a simple or rural manner, without any display or luxury. Arcadia was a mountainous district in southern Greece where the inhabitants were mostly shepherds, and the least intellectual of all the Greeks.

Q.—What does the writer of this piece imply in lines 28—32 on page 73?

A.—He means that those talk the most who perform the least, and conversely, those who do most, talk the least. The "returning voyagers" gave wordy accounts of all they had done, which deeds were very little after all, as they consisted mostly of their having only sailed over "the smooth waters of a summer's sea?"

## 7.—GLOSSARY.

*Assigns*.—Persons to whom any property is given by will.

*Aspect*.—View.

*Arbours*.—Bowers.

*Arquebuse*.—An old fashioned gun fired from a forked stand.

*Arcadian*.—Pastoral, simple and plain.

*Buoyant*.—Light and cheerful.

*Censured*.—Blamed.

*Circuitous*.—Roundabout.

*Desperate*.—Forlorn of all hope, hopeless.

*Disensions*.—Discords.

*Efficacy*.—Virtue.

*Executive*.—Magistrate's office.

*Equipped*.—Furnished, fitted up.

*Embarked*.—Sailed.

*Expectations*.—Prospect, hopes.

*Explored*.—Examined geographically.

*Exterminated*.—Rooted out.

*Fickleness*.—Changeableness.

*Fragrance*.—Sweet perfume.

*Festooned*.—Adorned with wreaths.

*Guile*.—Cunning deceit.

*Inevitable*.—Unavoidable.

*Inconsiderately*.—Thoughtlessly.

*Inpoverished*.—Made poor.

*Infectious*.—Cat ching, contagious.

*Impervious*.—Impenetrable.

*Incensed*.—Angered, enraged.

*Infixed*.—Fixed into.

*Judiciously*.—With sound judgement.

*Jarrings*.—Quarrels.

*Jurisdiction*.—Legal power over a territory.

*Legislative*.—Pertaining to or enacting law.

*Luxuriant*.—Thriving and overabundant.

*Merchantman*.—A trading ship.

*Navigation*.—The art or science of sailing.

*Outragious*.—Violent, furious.

*Odoriferous*.—Carrying perfume.

*Patent*.—Charter.

*Prosecute*.—Follow or pursue.





## Shakspeare's Early Life.

---

### INTRODUCTION.

*Struggling*—striving for mastery or supremacy. *Winning*—gaining or acquiring. *An.....glory*—a still greater fame or renown. *Letters*—literature. *Great*—eminent. *Appeared*—rose, came in view. *Dramatists*—plays written for acting on the stage of a theatre. *Plays*—dramatic writings. *Give life to*—revived, quickened. *The English stage*—the acting of dramas in England, English theatres (the stage is that platformed part in a theatre where the actors perform. Fig Metonymy). *Of these*—among these writers or dramatists. *Foremost*—first in rank. *Shakspeare*—(there are no less than 6 ways in which this name has been found spelt. The ordinary spelling is *Shakespeare* and not as it appears here).

### Page 84.

**Para. 1.** *Hardly*—scarcely. *Great*—famous, eminent. *Poet*—this word comes from a greek verb which means *to create*, hence *a poet* means literally *a creator*, that is, one who can create persons and situations from imagination, called the creative faculty. *Indeed*—really (here it emphasises the verb “do know,” being an adverb modifying this verb). *Of.....little*—of almost no great poet do we know so very little as we know of Shakspeare, i.e., our knowledge of Shakspeare is the least of all the knowledge we possess of great poets. *For*—as, in place of (carries the force of *comparison* arising out of the mean-

ing of exchange). *Story*—account. *Of.....youth*—when Shakspeare was a young man. *Trifling*—petty, of small importance. *Legends*—marvellous traditions, wonderful stories handed down from early times. *These*—this demonstrative pronoun is subject to the verb *are* understood. *Almost certainly*—all but quite surely. *False*—not true, made up. *Characteristic saying*—peculiar words spoken which mark out the speaker from others. *Jests*—jokes, witticisms. *Spoken*—uttered, delivered, cracked. *A single*—one solitary. *Anecdote*—a short story in a man's life. *Remain*—survive, are left behind. (*Note*—this verb would be much better in the singular number). *To illustrate*—to throw light upon, to show clearly. *Busy life*—life full of hard and constant work. *Look*—appearance. *Figure*—shape and figure (of body). *In later age*—when more advanced in years. *Preserved*—kept intact, saved from being lost. *Bust*—figure representing only the head, shoulders and the breast. *Bust.....tomb*—the marble figure of the upper part of Shakspeare's body set up on the grave. *Still.....town*—held in memory there as before by the people of the town (Statford-on-Avon) where he was born. *Minute diligence*—painstaking efforts directed to small details, detailed and careful research.

### Page 85.

*Later enquirers*—people who sought information afterwards. *To gleam*—to pick up, collect, gather. *Detail*—particular. *Trivial order*—common place kind, trifling nature. *Throw.....upon*—make clear. *The years.....death*—the period of time when he withdrew from active life, and before he died,—the evening of his life. *Owing perhaps to*—probably on account of. *The harmony unity*—the concord and agreement. *Temper*—disposition. *It*





thing about himself in his sonnets but this disclosure, if what people have supposed is correct is so dim. *A few outlines*—a few unfinished sketches. *Traced*—gathered or inferred (from signs or marks). *Boldest conjecture*—daring supposition, assuming things without due regard to any data. (*Note*—This is another Figurative expression which employs a constant or decayed Metaphor and means that we cannot draw a life or full-size character-portrait of Shakspeare from what he has disclosed about himself in his sonnets, but only a contour-sketch of him, and that even, by making the wildest guess). *Characters*—persons of his dramas or *dramatis personae*. *He.....characters*—he speaks through all the men and women he has created in his dramas. *Range*—(the shortened or beheaded form of *arrange*). extent, reach. *Range.....mankind*—embraces the whole human race. *Identify personally with the poet himself*—prove or make out to be the same person as Shakspeare himself. (*Note*—It is still more difficult to pick out some persons from his dramas and say, the poet reveals himself in these, for the characters of his dramas are all created by his genius, and they embrace all sorts and conditions of men and women throughout the world).

**Para. 2.** *Year*, (twelve) *years*, (three) *years* are all adverbial objects of time. 1564 may be parsed as a substantive in the objective case, governed by *in*. *Of the same as*—preposition phrase employed as subjective complement of "was." *Glover*—mark or seller of gloves. *Small farmer*—one who farmed only a few acres of land and had a small amount of capital (*farmer* and *glover*) both same case or case in apposition with *father*. *Of*—belonging to. *Forced*—driven, compelled. *Poverty*—

poor circumstances. *Lay down*—resign, give up. *Office*—duties or function. *Of* here denotes *reference* arising out of the original *partitive* force. This sentence implies two facts 1st, that Shakspeare's father was at first well-to-do, or he would not have been appointed an alderman (an honorary magistrate) in his town. 2nd that in course of time he became so poor that he could not continue to be an alderman. *Stress of poverty*—strain of poor circumstances, *i.e.*, hardship caused by poverty. *A wife*—Anne Hathaway of Shottery, a village about a mile off from Stratford. *Older*—by about eight years. *To* ..... *stage*—first to London to earn his livelihood and then to the theatre as the fit place for his talents, or, at once to the London theatres, there to act and earn his living both meanings being admissible; the latter, however, is the most likely meaning, as Shakspeare had already learnt to love the theatrical profession in his native town. *His* ..... *capital*—his beginning to live in London. *Begun*—commenced. *Year* in the second place is case in apposition with the first year. *The memorable*.....*armada*—the year worth-remembering before the Armada came. (For the Armada see appendix.) *And which*.....*Tamburlaine* and in which year people saw Marlowe writing and putting on the stage for acting his famous tragedy called “Tamburlaine the Great,” being an English corruption of Timur Lang (Timur the Lame) the great Tartar conqueror. *Take*—assume, understand. *The language of the Sonnets*—the kind of way he expresses his thoughts in the Sonnets. *Record*—a putting down, a writing down. *Personal feeling*—what he felt himself. *Profession*—the calling he had newly adopted. *Stirred*—roused. *Only*.....*self-contempt*—nothing more than the

most painful feeling which a man experiences when he begins to loathe himself. *Chides with*—bitterly finds fault with, scolds, complains against. *Fortune*—his lot in life personified. *That.....breed*—that (his lot in life) did not furnish him with means of livelihood other than what came from the theatre-going public, and which produced a corresponding habit. (The words within inverted commas are taken from the 11th Sonnet). *Writhes*—controls, feels bitter pain, or gnashes his teeth in rage. *At the thought*—when he comes to think, *Motley*—a fool, a clown. *To the view*—before the eyes of. The words here again within quotation marks are taken from the 112th Sonnet.

### Page 86.

*Apprentices*—young fellows learning different trades. *Pit of Blackfriars*—that part of the theatre, which is on a lower level than the stage, and provided with the cheapest seats. (For Blackfriars see Appendix). *Gaping*—gazing with their mouths wide open in wonder. *That he has.....Blackfriars*—that he has made a fool of himself (by acting different parts and putting on different kinds of stage-dresses) before the eyes of the young fellows (apprenticed to various trades) who bought cheap tickets, (being too poor to pay for box or dress seats), and sat open-mouthed and wondering in the pit of the theatre of Blackfriars. "*Thence come it*"—it is from this cause therefore it so happens. *That.....brand*—that my name is stigmatised, that my name is, or I am, branded, with disgrace. *And almost thence*—and nearly for that reason. *Subdued*—tamed or influenced by. *In* governs which understood before it. The words are quoted again from the 111th Sonnet, and means, because Shakspeare makes

a fool of himself by acting in the theatre, his name has been branded with disgrace, and perhaps that is why his nature has become stagey (=literally, my nature has taken its colour from my profession, as a dyer's hand takes the colour of the dye in which he dabbles.) *Application*—the meaning attributed to these words. *But...one*—but the meaning or interpretation given to these words is very uncertain, i.e., it is quite questionable if this is what is meant by those words in the Sonnets. *In spite of*—notwithstanding. *Squabbles*—quarrels. *Dramatic rivals*—competitors on the stage, fellow-actors. *Out-set*—begining, commencement, starting. *Career*—course in life (as an actor). *Genial nature*—sunny or cheerful disposition. *Newcomer*—newly arrived actor (Shakspere). *Won him*—earned for him. (*Him* is dative of interest here). *General.....fellows*—the love of nearly all among his fellow-actors. *A mere actor*—only an actor and nothing more. *Fitter.....stage*—one who by cutting and clapping adapted old dramas for the purposes of acting. *A fellow play wright*—one who composed petty dramas and was employed in the same theatre as Shakspere. *Chettle*—Henry Chettle was a printer or compositor, playwright and editor of some of Green's comedies. *Green's attack*—Robert Green, the comedian; wrote on his death-bed in 1592. *A Groatsworth of wit*—attacking Shakspere savagely and calling him all kinds of names, like 'an upstart crow,' 'a Johannes Factotum,' 'a Shakescene' &c. *Words of honest affection*—words expressing sincere love. *Demeanour*—manner of behaving or conducting himself. *Civil*—courteous and polite. *Excellent*—eminent or distinguished. *Quality he professes*—the kind of work,—writing plays,—which is his

profession or trade. *Have seen*—agrees with its subject *I* understood, *myself*—being case in apposition with it. *Than* should be reduced into modern English Grammar and treated as a conjunction. *He* is case absolute with *being* understood after it. *No less* .....*excellent*—as civil as he is excellent. *Besides*—adverb modify the whole clause after it) moreover. *Divers of worship*—various worthy people, meaning, persons of title and rank such as the Earl of Southampton and the Earl of Pembroke. *Reported*—spoken of, testified. *Uprightness of dealing*—honest way of doing business. *Argues*—proves. *Honesty* in the English of that time it meant well-bred straight forwardness, which was the characteristic of a gentleman. *Factionous grace*—similarly meant, happy knack. *Approves his art*—shows the real worth of his art of writing dramas. *His partner Burbage*—Richard Burbage, who became the most celebrated actor of the time, and his brother, Cuthbert Burbage, took Shakspeare and some others as partners in the profits of the two theatres (the Globe or Bankside and the Blackfriars) at Shoreditch in London, which they and their father before them had built. *Worthy*—possessing merit. *Jonson*—Ben Jonson (see Appendix). *Handed.....time*—passed on what people mostly believed about Shakspeare in Ben Jonson's time. *Him*—Shakspeare. *Described*—represented. *Open and free*—candid and frank.

**Para. 3.** *As* preposition governing *actor*. *At any rate*—putting the least value on it. *Of essential service*—of the greatest use. *In the poetic career*—in his life-work as a poet. *Undertook*—assumed. *The sense*—the personal knowledge. *Theatrical necessities*—the qualities required in a writer and his plays to become successful.

in the theatre. *Effective*:—forceful. *Boards*—stage (Fig. Metonymy). *Enabled him*—helped him. *To bring to the test of the stage*—to prove their worth by having them acted. *His pieces as he wrote them*—his plays (whole or in parts) as soon as he finished writing them. *Statement*—what Jonson has said. *Blotted*—cut out, drew his pen through. *Censure*—blame, criticism. *Implies*—conveys indirectly. involves in what Jonson has said, inferentially reflecting that Shakspeare was a careless or incorrect writer (of dramas) has no justice or fairness in it. *The conditions..... publication*—the surroundings and situations which influenced and controlled the publishing of poems or poetical writings. *In fact*—really. *Wholly different from*—altogether other than. *Those*—the conditions. *Our own day*—the present time. *Remained in manuscript as an acting piece*—was left (unprinted and unpublished) just as the author wrote it, and was put on the stage of a theatre and acted from time to time. *Subject.....amendment*—liable to be altered and corrected ever and anon. *Rehearsal*—recital, private acting as a trial. *Representation*—public acting. *Afforded hints*—furnished suggestions or gave opportunities for suggesting. *For change*—what alterations should be made (in the manuscript). *We know*—(from an earlier edition of his Hamlet, for example). *The young poet*—i.e., Shakspeare. *Was.....neglecting*—was quick to make use of. *The chance*—the unforeseen circumstances. *Preserved*—kept intact. *Earlier edition*—older publication, i.e., "Hamlet" as it was composed and published before the "Hamlet" now current. *Hamlet*—one of Shakspeare's best tragedies. *Unsparring way*—wholesale manner, fully (without exception). *Could re-*

*cast*—was capable of remoulding or re-writing. *The chance.....recast*—The unforeseen circumstances which have combined to keep intact a very old published copy of his well-known tragedy, "Hamlet," proves how ruthlessly he was capable of rehandling.

Page 87.

*Even.....the genius*—not only what he ordinarily wrote, but also the masterpieces of his extraordinarily gifted train. *Supposed date*—the date conjectured by people. *Already*—as soon as that. *Dramatist*—writer of dramas or plays. *Bitterly*—sharply, with intense dislike. *Shakescene*—this is a pun on his name, of which the first syllable points out clearly who is meant, the second part (*perc* or *peare*) changed into *scene*, a rough equivalent of (*up*) *peare* (*e*), thus throwing thin covering over the real name. *Upstart crow*—refers to the well-known story from Aesop's Fables, where a crow decked itself out in peacock feathers. *Upstart*—a worthless fellow suddenly risen from the ranks or an obscure position. *Beautified &c.*, —made beautiful in clothes (here feathers) borrowed from us. *A sneer*—a taunt. *Points to*—indicates, shows. *Celebrity*—fame, distinction. *Preparation*—making or getting himself ready. *For loftier flight*—for soaring higher as a poet. *By fitting*—by rising and adopting. *Pieces*—dramas or plays. *Predecessors*—those writers of plays who flourished before him (like Greene and Marlow). *For the stage*—for acting. *Partner*—part owner. *Wright*—derived from the past participle of the verb *to work*. (—*wrought*) and forms a compound in such words as *wheelwright*, *sheepwright* etc. In *playwright* it means one who works in i.e., writes and prepares plays or dramas. The word does not imply a very gifted person, but in

Shakspeare's case it meant from the profession of an ordinary writer and reviser of plays he rose to be the greatest poet in the world. *Johannis etc.*—literally, "John-the-Do-all". There is a shade of difference, however, between a "Factotum" and a "Jack-of-all-Trades"—see part appendix No. 6. *To take*—to undertake. *Honest work*—work involving nothing that was wrong or evil, work which enabled the door to earn his bread honestly, however hard or pretty the work may be. *Which.....hand*—which offered itself conveniently, which easily came within reach.

**Para. 4.** *With*—denotes *time simultaneous*. *The first &c.*,—the first offspring of my inventive or creative power, i.e., poetic imagination. *The period.....began*—the duration of time commenced fairly (in full measure) when he composed original pieces. *Faerie*—fairy. *Had placed.....poetry*—had made Edmuud Spencer the first among English poets with none to compete with him. *Leading*—foremost. *Passed away*—died. *Self-reproach*—censured by his own conscience, self-accused. *Doll*—a shortened pet name for. *Dolly* or *Delphine*. *He.....abandoned*—whom he had deserted. *Charge*—command, enjoin. *By*—denotes solemn adjuration, and may be made to mean here *for the sake of*. *The love of our youth*—the love with which we loved each other when we were young. *And by.....rest*—and if you wish or want my soul to rest in peace (after my death). *This man paid*—this shoemaker of Dowgate in whose house Greeno died; manage or arrange to pay him for what he has spent on my account. *Succoured*—helped and relieved. *Had*—would have. *We*—retained object of 'were granted.' Of carries an adjectival force. *Of every man abhorred*—by every



man hated and despised, *by* here denotes *agency*. *Loosely*—laxly, dissolutely. *Undone*—ruined in body and soul. *Street brawl*—a petty quarrel (first begun in a tavern or drink-shop and then finished fatally for Marlowe in the street close by the tavern, people then being allowed to carry swords or daggers.) *Removed*—by death. *Elapsed*—passed in the interval. *Appearance*—publication. *Series of masterpieces*—a number of most excellent plays published in quick succession. *Master*—here denotes superiority of the highest order. *Nothing . . . . activity*—the most remarkable thing about his genius is that it was ceaselessly at work.

#### Page 88.

*Early poem*—"Venus and Adonis" his first poem. *On an average*—on the mean calculation. *Growth and progress*—gradual development and advancement. *In the order*—in the serial number of *many* of these plays. *Absence*—want. *Certain*—sure. *Information*—knowledge gained by reading or enquiring. *As to*—regarding, to be parsed together as a phrase preposition governing "Dates." *Of their appearance*—when they (these plays) appeared in public print. *Has to build*—is obliged to rest or depend. *In some form*—in manuscript or privately printed form. *Earlier plays*—dramas published between 1588 and 1598. *Defined*—given boundaries to, put within limits. *Wits . . . Meres* for Wits &c., see appendix. *Omission of a play*—not mentioning the name of a drama. *Casual catalogue*—a list prepared by chance, without any set purpose. *Warrant*—justify. *Assuming*—taking it for granted, supposing. *In . . . . time*—would scarcely justify our supposition that it must have been without existence at the time the list was made in 1598.

*Fixed*—dated. *Ascribed*—imputed. *Approximate fashion*—in a manner which makes the nearest approach (to the exact date of publication). *Fellow-actors*—the Burbages and some 20 others. *Beyond*—outside, with the exception of, or excepting. *Meagre facts*—scanty things that actually occurred. *All*—everything else. *Conclusions*—inference. *These*—(facts). *Assumed resemblances*—imaginary or supposed similarities (likenesses). *Reference*—allusion. *Accepted*—taken, received. *As..... the truth*—as things which come as near as possible to the actual fact.

- **Para 5.** *The bulk*—the major number, the larger number. *Lighter*—more easy, more gay, cheery like his "comedy of errors." *Historical dramas*—plays dealing with historical persons and events, like his "King Richard II" &c. *Can be assigned*—i.e., the dates of the larger number of the above can be fixed. *With fair probability*—with tolerably correct likelihood. *Adapter*—one who revised and fitted up dramas by making additions and alterations. *Bear*—carry. *Stamp*—impress. *They..... youth*—they carry easily distinguishable marks of their having been composed when Shakspeare was a young man. *Fresh*—just arrived. *Own*—native town. *Daisies.....blue*—pied daisies and blue violets for which Stratford was and is still famous. *Pied daisies*—are flowers of that name with either white petals and yellow centres or pink petals and yellow centres, in both cases producing a particoloured effect like a magpie. The adjective *pied* is here an ornamental and not an essential epithet, as all daisies are pied or particoloured like the bird magpie, similarly *blue*—is ornamentally used, as all violets are blue. *Gay bright music*—merry and cheerful tunes. *Its country*

*ditties*...short village songs of Stratford. *Still in his ears*—the echoes of which were still (up to that time) ringing in his ears, his memory of such things being so recent, *Flings*—throws himself headlong, (denoting how *thoroughly* and *heartily* he joined). *Into*.....*England*—(fig. metonymy, taking container for the things contained) into the very heart and centre of the gay and clever Englishmen and English women. *Which*.....*Elizabeth*—who came and surrounded Queen Elizabeth. *Busying himself*—employing himself constantly. *As yet*—up to that time. *For the most part*—mostly (as regards both time and occupation). *With the surface*—with the upper part. *Of it*—of that throng of brilliant men and women. It means that Shakspeare's contact with this throng at that time was only superficial and slight. *Humours*—moods, dispositions, queer dispositions.

### Page 89

*Quixotisms*—romantic extravagance or high flown or absurdly romantic manners. (*Note*.—The word is derived from the proper noun Don Quixote, the hero (of a Spanish novel by Cervantes) famous for doing extravagant things, e. g., tilting against a wind-mill). *Whit*—an old and obsolete spelling of *wit*, meaning witticism and waggyery. *Whim*—caprice, freak, vagary. *Unreality*—artificialness, spuriousness. *Fantastic extravagance*—grotesque absurdity (in language and manners). *Veiled*—concealed, drew a curtain over. *Inner nobleness*—greatness within. *Country lad*—a lad from the village (or rural town of Stratford) a lad is older than a boy and younger than a youngman (between 16 and 21). *As*—although. *Master*—thoroughly versed in. *It all*—all the things mentioned above and below. *Patter*—repeat or utter by rote. *Eu-*

*phuism*—language affectedly elegant and refined. (The word comes from the proper name *Euphuus*, the name of the hero of a book called by this name, and written by John Lyly in a strange and affected style which became fashionable in Elizabeth's court). *Exchange*.....*with the best*—return quip for quip (a sharp saying or witty jest), and repartee for repartee (a smart reply) with the best of Elizabeth's courtiers. *At home*—thoroughly conversant with. *Pedantries and affectations*—bombastic and artificial language making a ridiculous parade of learning. *Brag*—vaunt and boast. *Rhetoric*—flashy oratory. *Passion*—craze love, mad liking. *For*.....*marvellous*—for all that was grotesque and wonderful, *Can laugh at*—draw amusement from. *Heartily*—thoroughly. *Romantic vagaries*—highly fanciful and wildly whimsical language and manners. *Courtly world*—that portion of the world which consisted of (Elizabeth's) courtiers. (Fig Metonymy). *In*.....*himself*—where he is thrown. *Narrow dulness*—the stupid ways of the narrow minded people. *Pompous triflings*—great display of importance and dignity over petty things. *Country*... ..*behind*—that portion of the world which consisted of rustics (Stratford) and from which he had recently come. *Frankly*—openly. *Malice*—ill-will, spite. *Grandeur*—greatness and eminence. *Quixotry and word-play*—extravagant and fantastic language. *Owens with a smile*—acknowledges with an amused air. *Brought*.....*with*—confronted with. *Facts of human life*—acts and deeds (*not words*) that occur in man's life. *Suffering of man*—human misery. *Danger of England*—when England is threatened (with invasion, for example, by the Spanish Armada). *Fops*—landies, coxcombs. *Stuff of heroes*—the ingredients or

materials with which heroes are made. *He shares..... living*—he enjoys in common with others the great and intense pleasure of merely possessing the animal life. *Which.....age*—which was distinguishing mark in the life of the people of that time. *Enjoys*—derives pleasure from. *Contracts*—opposite characters, dissimilar qualities of people. *Adventures*—enterprises, exploits, risky undertakings in love or war. *About*—around. *Fun*—love of amusements or liking for Jokes. *Breaks out*—rushes forward, gushes out. *Riotously*—uproariously. *Practical jokes*—tricks or jests involving injury to the object of the joke. *Blunderings &c.*,—no end of huge mistakes. *Earlier efforts*—dramas written in his younger days. *Efforts*—is here taken to mean cause for effect (Fig Mtonymy). *Work*—what he did. *Little*—almost no or none. *Poetic elevation*—the loftiness of performance, which belongs to or marks a great poet. *Passion*—that intensely strong feeling or emotion (such as love joy, revenge, ambition) which vibrates through the soul and causes it to suffer. *Easy grace of the dialogue*—the beauty with which a conversation flowed smoothly between two persons. *The dexterous &c.*,—the skilful manner in which an intricate story is handled (as in the “Comedy of Errors”). *The genial &c.*,—the cheerful mirth of his mental temper (imparted to his writings). *The music &c.*,—the melodious flow of his poetry. *Promised a master of*—held out the expectation of finding in Shakspeare an author who would be an adept in. *Social comedy*—comedy on the social affairs of men (as distinguished from the affairs of humanity at large). *Turned*—turned his attention. *Superficial.....him*—the surface or outer features of the Elizabethian world of men and

women by whom he was surrounded. *A new delight*—a fresh source of joy. *Character and actions*—the inner nature and the deeds which proceeded from that nature (as distinguished from the above mentioned surface, or outer-features). *The.....character*—the pleasure to be derived from a study of the inner character of men and women. *Fresh*—new and untried. *Vivid*—bright and clear. (*Note*.—The figure of speech employed here is a kind of sustained Metaphor on a small scale. The surface part of the Elizabethian world which Shakspeare had already touched is like the upper layer of a well or sheet of water thoroughly explored. The inner character of that world is like the deeper depth of that water which was still untouched, and therefore quite fresh and sparkling). *The sense.....novelty*—the feeling that every person was a separate character had a fascinating attraction, derived from the fact of its being altogether a new subject of study. *And poet.....sketching*—and Shakspeare who combined in his person the qualities of a poet and essayist (writer of a short article on some important subject) was hard at labour, portraying. *The humours of mankind*—the various moods of mind found in various men. The inverted commas mean that the word in this sense has been borrowed from Ben Jonson who wrote two comedies on this subject. *Shakspeare.....fellows*—Shakspeare drew the characters from real men among whom he lived, and not from imaginary beings.

Page 90.

*His.....manners*—the way he depicted the habits, behaviours &c. *Suffused*—tinctured. The word here suggests the use of a constant Metaphor, likening Shakspeare to a painter who mixes his colours and spreads it on

his portraits. *Tenderness*—delicate affectionateness. *Ideal beauty*—beauty (of character) as it exists in the mind (and therefore superior to that which is actually found in men and women). *Which.....protest*—which stood as a vigorous counter-statement. *Hard though vigorous*—stiff though forceful. *Character-painting*—description of character. *Brought.....fashion*—introduced as the rage of the period. The whole sentence means that Ben Jonson had described the humours of mankind in his "Every Man in his Humour" and Shakspeare had also done the same in his "Two Gentlemen of Verona," but if the two dramas are compared to two portraits, the former looks stiff and artificial, like a mere skin-and-bones, drawing, while the latter is full of soft natural flesh-and-blood reality. *Quick on these*—fast following these. *Followed*—there came behind. *Two*—plays. *His genius.....into life*—woke up into a full state of conscious existence, that is, his genius was no longer asleep, but became fully vigorous. *Poetic power*—poet's creative faculty. *Held.....now*—kept under control up to this time, or, kept back for future use up to that moment like the reserve force of an army. (The figure or image suggested by the expression may also imply the repression of water from a fountain, as is most probably the case from what follows). *Showed.....profusion*—rushed out in magnificent plenteousness. *In.....dream*—and took the form of those sparkling creations of imagination which were embodied in the characters of the "Midsummer Night's Dream." *And passion*—and the passion of love. *Swept*—rushed broadcast. *Tide....delight*—a tidal wave of intense pleasure that could not be withstood. The last portion of the sentence means that the passion of love

rushed with such force through the pages of "Romeo and Juliet," that it carried away every thing before it.

## APPENDIX V.

### 1 & 2. Historical and Biographical.

1. The outlines of his life as found in the text may be filled in by the following facts, partly actual, partly probable. When poverty overtook his family, he quitted Stratford, about 1585 or 1587, and removed to London. When he reached the metropolis, he may have gone to the livery-stables close by Smithfield, and sold the horse on which he rode up to town, thus making the acquaintance of James Burbage, the purchaser who owned the said stables, and is supposed to have originally come from Warwickshire like Shakspeare. Here he is said to have been first employed by James Burbage to take care of the horses of those who came to the theatre owned by Richard Burbage and his brother Cuthbert Burbage, sons of James Burbage, keeper of the livery-stables, and also owner of the theatre, together with his sons. In course of time he was put on the list of actors. There were two or three theatres at the time in the Parish of Shoreditch, and Shakspeare began acting in one of these, either the one called "The Theatre," at the time, and "The Globe" afterwards, or the other named "The Curtain." "Blackfriars" was the name of another theatre where Shakspeare was made partner in the profits afterwards when his fame spread. From an actor he became a play wright, and occupied himself with revising and adapting old plays for the stage. Then he turned his attention to the writing of original dramas on his own account, and made it the business of his life. How he



succeeded in this capacity and how his fame spread even during his life-time, it is not necessary to mention. Four hundred years and more have passed since then, and his fame has continued, to increase with every century, and will no doubt go on still increasing as long as the English language lasts. He appeared before Elizabeth, and then before James I, as an actor and a playwright, and closed his career in London about the year 1613. Then he retired from active life, left London and returned to his native town, Stratford on Avon where he bought considerable property and settled down till the close of his life in 1616 when he died on the 23rd of April. He was buried two days afterwards in the parish church of Stratford, and the following epitaph, said to have been composed by the poet during his life-time, was placed over his grave. The allusion about the moving of his bones refers to the practice then carried on of transferring the bones from graves to the chancel house.

“ Good friend, for Jesus’ sake forbear  
To dig the dust enclosed here :  
Blest be the man that spares these stones  
And cursed he that moves my bones ”.

Shakspeare’s works may be divided into *poems* and *plays*. The former consists of *Venus and Adonis*, *The Rape of Lucrece*, *The Passionate Pilgrim*, *The Phoenix and the Turtle*, *A Lover’s complaint* and *The sonnets*. The latter counts 37 dramas, including comedies and tragedies of unapproachable excellence.

2. *Edmund spencer*—was born in London about 1552. He was educated at Merchant Taylors’ School and at Pembroke Hall, Cambridge. He was a friend of Sir Philip Sidney and Sir Walter Raleigh. As a boy

in school he began writing verses, and published translations from Petrarch and Du Bellay. He resided mostly in Ireland where he held various subordinate offices. In 1598, his house was sacked and burnt by the munster rebels, and he returned in great distress to London, and died at Westminster, January 16th, 1598-9, and was buried in the Abbey. The following are the names of his works:—*The Shepheards' Calender*, *Complaints*, *Colin clouts come Home again*, *Amoretti Sonnets*, *Epithalamion* and *The Faerie Queene*. The last-named, an allegorical tale, is the most famous among his writings.

3. *Bacon, Francis, Lord Verulam, Viscount St. Albans*, known generally by Pope's famous line as "the wisest, brightest, meanest of mankind," was born in London, January 22, 1561. His keen love of knowledge with his precocious gravity won for him from Elizabeth, the playful title of her "young Lord Keeper." He was knighted in 1603, became Attorney-General in 1613, Keeper of the Great Seal in 1617 and Lord Chancellor in 1619, with the title of Lord Verulam. Next year he was made Viscount St. Albans. As Lord Chancellor he abused his high position by taking bribes. A parliamentary enquiry in 1621 ended in his confessing his guilt, and he was sentenced to a fine of £100,000, with confinement in the Tower during the King's (James I) pleasure, and to be banished for life from the court and from public employment. During the rest of his life, after the fine was remitted and the imprisonment cut short to only two days, he devoted himself to literature and science. Among the large number of very learned books he wrote, his *Essays*, *The advancement of Learning*, *Novum Organum* and his *Wisdom of the ancients* stand unrivalled. He is also

known as 'the father of Inductive Philosophy.' He died in 1626. The Americans started a theory, at first eagerly taken up by many, but now given up almost wholly, that Bacon was really the writer of all Shakspeare's plays.

4. *Robert Greene*—was born at Norwich, probably in 1560. He was a graduate of St. John's College, Cambridge, in 1578, but took his degree of M.A., five years later at Clare Hall. After this he travelled in Italy and Spain (which with France sometimes thrown in was then called 'the grand tour,' and considered necessary as a finishing touch in the education of a gentleman), and returning to London, gained his living as a playwright and pamphleteer. It was most probably at this period of his life that he came in contact with Shakspeare who is supposed to have revised and adapted one or two of his and Marlowe's plays. He smarted so much under this indignity, that he wrote and published through his printer Henry Chettle, a pamphlet, oddly named. *A Groatsworth of Wit bought with a million of Repentance*—in which he savagely attacked Shakspeare under the name of 'Shakscene,' and from which a passage has been quoted in the text. He lived a reckless life of debauchery till September 3, 1592, when he died in poverty and repentance in the house of a shoe-maker of Dowgate. His first work was the novel of *Mamillia*—which was followed by a rapid succession of tales, poems, plays and pamphlets. His most remarkable lyrics appeared in *Menaphone*, *Never too late* and *the morning Garment*.

5. *Christopher Marlowe*—was born at Canterbury in February 1564, and educated at the King's School there, and at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, then known by the name of Benet. He died young, being

killed in a tavern brawl, and was buried at Debtford, June 1, 1593. The dates and order of his work are somewhat uncertain. He is believed to have had a share in Shakspeare's *Henry VI*—His genius raised the Elizabethian drama to a height which only Shakspeare's could overtop. The manner in which he depicted the death scene in his *Edward II*, had given a higher tone of passion and power than Shakspeare's. His bent was the sublime and the terrible. Had he lived he might have become as great a tragic poet as Shakspeare himself. Though he could not have written Shakspeare's *as you like it*, he might have almost reached the greatness of his *Mac'eth*.

6. Ben Jonson—handed down to us as playwright and lyricist was born at Westminster in 1573, a month after the death of his father who was a clergyman of Scottish descent. He received a free education at Westminster School. Between the time of his removal from the school at an early age and the year 1619 when he received the M. A., degree from the University of Oxford, and the poet-laureateship from King James I, he was apprenticed to a brick-layer, served in the Netherlands and finally obtained an engagement at the Curtain theatre in Shore-ditch as player and dramatist. Then he came to the Globe Theatre where his *Every man is his Humour*—was acted in 1598 on the recommendation of Shakspeare. Thus commenced a friendship between the two playwrights and poets, which lasted till Shakspeare's death. 1603 appeared his *Sejanus* which he is supposed to have written in conjunction with Shakspeare. Ben Jonson's affection and admiration for Shakspeare are often pointed out in the following of the quoted words of the former :—"I loved the man," whom he calls "gentle Shakspeare," and adds, "I do

honour his memory on this side idolatry, as much as any : he was indeed honest, and of an open and free nature," though he summed up his verdict on Shakspeare's classical education in those well-known words :—"and though thou hadst small Latin and less Greek" Ben Jonson, born a protestant, became a Roman Catholic, and then came back again to Protestantism. He died August 6, 1637, and was buried in Westminster Abbey, in an upright position, with the following words on his grave :—"O rare Ben Jonson." He is famous for his lyrics, and his witticisms in which he indulged freely against Shakspeare and others at the well-known Mermaid Club. Jonson's plays are sixteen in number, and his masques (histrionic scene) number thirty-five. The best of his lyrics, for which he is renowned, are *Drink to me only with Thine Eyes* and *See the Chariot*.

7. *Henry Chettle*—printer, compositor and playwright, who edited Greene's pamphlet. *A Groatsworth of Wit*—in which Shakspeare was so savagely attacked. In December of the same year (1592) Chettle published his. *Kind-Hart's Dreame*—in the preface to which he apologises to Shakspeare for Greene's unworthy attack, and expresses his regret for not having used his discretion in moderating the angry pamphleteer's warmth and indignation at the success of a man like Shakspeare who unlike Greene, had no university education. The words of Chettle's apology are quoted in the text.

8. *The Burbages*—Father. (*James*), and two sons (*Richard*) who became the most celebrated actor of the time, and (*Cuthbert*). The two sons were fellow-actors of Shakspeare, and James Burbage, the father, was owner of the livery-stables near Smithfield, as well as proprietor,

with his sons, and later on with Shakspeare, of the two Shoreditch Theatres, namely, the Globe and the Blackfriars.

\* 9. *Francis Meres*—a Master of Arts (or M. A.) of both Oxford and Cambridge Universities, published a little volume named *Polludis Famia*—(“ Witt’s or Wit’s Treasury”) in 1598, near the end of which appears a “Comparative Discourse of our English Poets with the Greeke, Latine and Italian Poets,” and this the ‘list’ referred to in the lesson, and bears remarkable testimony to the high rank held by Shakspeare as a narrative and a dramatic poet.

---

### 3. Geographical and Topographical.

*Stratford*—also called. *Stratford-on-Avon*—to distinguish it from stratford-le-Bow (a parish of London) is a market-town of Warwickshire, and Shakspeare’s birthplace, 9 miles S. W. of Warwick by rail, and stands on a gentle eminence above the right bank of the Avon which is spanned by an ancient 15th century bridge of fourteen pointed arches, being 1128 feet long. The parish church of the Holy Trinity, restored in 1840, is the burial place of Shakspeare and his family. The grammar-school of the place where Shakspeare received his schooling was founded in 1482. The world famous house in Henley Street where the poet was born is still shown to sightseers, but of course, it is not the same house. Stratford is famous for its wild flowers, like “daisies pied and violets blue,” growing in luxuriant abundance.

*The Mermaid Inn*—was founded by Sir Walter Raleigh. It was the favourite resort of all poets and wits

of the time, being frequented by Shakspeare, Ben Jonson, Raleigh, Beaumont Fletcher and others.

*Blackfriars* — is a name originally given to the Dominican monks, as *Whitefriars* was given to the Carmelite monks. The name of the former (from their black dress) is connected with the Theatre in the parish of Shoreditch where at the time of Shakspeare several theatres are mentioned, *viz.* "The Theatre," "The Curtain," "The Globe Theatre" and "The Blackfriars Theatre." Shakspeare's first appearance as an actor took place, according to some authorities, in the first or the second named theatre. He was subsequently connected with the Globe (or Bankside) Theatre as well as the Blackfriars Theatre of both of which he became part proprietor with the Burbages.

The theatres of that time were either *private* or *public*. Performances took place in the former by candle-light, as they were smaller in size and wholly roofed in, while in the latter which were open to the sky and spacious, they were given by daylight, though in both the play began in the afternoon, often at 3 o'clock, and ended at five or between five and six. The spectators who occupied the *pit* or *yard* were obliged to stand in public theatres; in private theatres they were seated. The tickets cost from one penny or twopence (for the *pit*, most probably) to two shillings or half-a-crown. Boys performed the female parts, and the appointments and appliances were very crude and simple, although the dresses were very costly.

---

#### 4. Explanatory.

Q — Elucidate page-wise all the passages and expressions in the lesson that require additional explanation.

A.—Page 84.—*While England &c.*, (line 15)—while men like Hawkins, Drake, Frobisher, Gilbert and Raleigh were striving to establish the supremacy of England in the new world, and by water.

*Great writers both in prose and poetry*—(lines 16 and 17)—Great writers *in prose* were men like Sir Phillip Sidney, Richard Hooker, Sir Walter Raleigh and Francis Bacon.

*One or two trifling legends* (lines 21 and 22)—This refers to the well-known tradition of Shakspeare's deer-stealing when he was a lad. The story runs as follows:—Sir Thomas Lucy of Charlcoate, near Stratford, was very unpopular in the neighbourhood. Some young fellows whom Shakspeare joined, banded together and made a frequent practice of stealing the knight's deer. For this Shakspeare was prosecuted, and in order to revenge that ill-usage, the poet made a ballad upon the gentleman, which incensed Sir Thomas so much that he redoubled the prosecution and obliged the poet to take shelter in London. Some believe this story and some do not. The former say poaching was nothing very uncommon in those days, for nearly all the under graduates of Oxford were poachers then.

*The bust over his tomb* (line 26)—This "life-size" bust was the work of either Gerard Johnson, sculptor and "tombe-maker," a native of Amsterdam who resided in London, or of Johnson's son. It was erected not long after his death, certainly before 1623, on the northern wall of the chancel of the parish church at Stratford.

#### Page 85.

*The Sonnets* (line 8).—A sonnet is a single thought contained in 14 lines of poetry, each line consisting of five



Iambic feet. The first 8 lines are called the *Octave*, and the last 5 the *Sestet*. The subject is either reflective, or it relates to love. Shakspeare's Sonnets are both, and contain  $154 \times 14 = 2156$  lines. To whom they are addressed will always remain mystery. Some say they are addressed to William Herbert, Earl of Pembroke, while others hold their inspirer was Henry Wriothesly, Earl of Southampton, both of whom were Shakspeare's patrons. They were known among the poet's friends long before they appeared before the public. In 1609 they were printed and issued by a bookseller named Thomas Thorpe, whose few words of introductory inscription were either stupidly or intentionally made so puzzling that a Chinese puzzle they have remained up to the present time, and are likely to do so in future. To Mr. W. H., whoever he might have been, are addressed the 1st 126 Sonnets, and the remainder to some equally unknown lady who was the object of Shakspeare's love, but not more beloved than that "Mr. W. H." In these sonnets, many suppose the poet has given glimpses of his own life-history, like sonnets 110 and 111, for example, from which quotations are given in the text. Sonnet No. 107 is supposed to contain reference to the death of Queen Elizabeth, and the accession of James I.

- *The Armada* (line 25).—or the attempted Spanish invasion of England took place on the 31st of July 1588, although the fleet had left Lisbon on the 29th of May. The Spanish King, Phillip II called the fleet the "Invincible," although with Englishmen it remained the "Armada" (=armed). The fleet consisted of 130 vessels, mostly of very large size, bearing 19,295 soldiers, 8000 mariners, 2000 oarsmen, and 2000 volunteers of the most distingui-

shed families of Spain. The English force to meet the Armada, amounted only to 30 vessels, augmented by volunteers to 181, mostly small vessels, carrying 17,472 men. The Duke de Medina Sidonia and Ricaldo (vice admiral) commanded the Armada, while the English fleet was led by Lord Howard of Effingham, supported by Drake (vice-admiral) Hawkins and Frobisher. The result of the failure of the Armada were that it destroyed the power of the Spanish King on the Spanish main, and threw open the commerce of the Indies to Britian and all the world. The defeat of the Spanish fleet was the combined work of Lord Howard and the terrible tempest that raged at the time.

*Marlowe's Tamburlaine (line 26).*—This is a tragedy published by Marlowe in 1587, the full name being. *Trmburlaine the great*—It was full of rant, bombast, and also genius. It was openly attacked by Greene, and afterwards ridiculed in the mouth of Shakspere's Pistol in *Henry VI*—The common people accepted it with delight, and were indulged with a second part of it.

*Public means that public manners breed (lines 30 and 31).*—means of subsistence earned from the theatre-going people, and which consequently produced in the poet-actor a kind of stagey or theatrical manners that always sought to create a dramatic effect. This cannot be believed of Shakspere who was "of an open and free nature," according to his friends. The sonnet (111th) describes only the general result.

*A motley.....Blackfriars (line 32 and page 86, line 1.)*—Shakspeare always considered himself a gentleman, and the son of a gentleman, and the friends of his own choice were all gentlemen. It galled him, therefore, to

think that fortune compelled him to provide amusement as an actor to the butchers, bakers and candle stickmakers' apprentices who paid a penny or two pence, and entered the pit of the Blackfriars theatre, and laughed at him and his acting, or sat with their mouths open in wonder.

*A brand (line 2)*—literally a burnt or burning stick, then to be marked with such a stick, like criminals to indicate their crime. Hence "my name," he says, "has been branded," that is, my very name indicates my disagreeable, if not disgraceful, profession.

"*Hamlet*" shows (line 33.)—The current copy of his *Hamlet* differs so much from an earlier edition of it, that we cannot but come to the conclusion that if he thought alteration necessary, he made the alterations with an unsparing hand, even if the book, like *Hamlet*—was one of his best.

#### Page 87.

*As Shakspeare calls it (line 12.)*—He published his poem, *Venus and Adonis*—in 1593, and dedicated it to his patron, Henry Wriothesly, Earl of Southampton, and called it "the first heir of my invention" in the dedication where he also promised that if his poem should please the earl, he would prepare some "graver labour" for his patron's honour, and this resulted in the publication of his *Lucrece*—in 1594.

#### Page 90.

"*Every man in his Humour*" (line 4.)—Ben Jonson published this comedy in 1598. On Shakspeare's recommendation it was acted in the Globe theatre. There are five principal characters in the book, each having a "humour" or characteristic mood of mind which coloured his whole life. Captain Bobadil, for instance, whose

"humour" is bragging; was thrashed as a coward Stephen whose "humour" is perpetual stupidity, is made a fool of by every one.

According to an ancient theory, says Dr. Brewer, "there are four principal humours in the body: phlegm, blood, choler, and black bile. As any one of these preponderates, it determines the temper of the mind and body." And so we have sanguine (from blood), choleric (choler); phlegmatic (phlegm), and melan cholic (black bile), humours or temperaments.

Q.—Parse the following words:—PAGE 84.—*More* (17). *Little* (20). *These*. *Remain* (22). PAGE 85.—*To gleam* (1).—*To have left* (5).—*That* (9).—*Characters* (10).—*There* (11). *To lay* (19). *As* (27). *Better* (30). PAGE 86.—*More than doubtful* (4). *Actor and fitter* (8). *As* (17). *To bring* (23), *Subject* (29). PAGE 87.—*Sincer* (5). *Soon* (7). *Of* (9). *To take* (10). *Heir* (12). *As* (12). *Doll* (20). *Pail* (22). *To live* (24). *I* (27.) *Only* (28). *Might have equalled* (29). *About Thirty* (30). PAGE 88.—*To have produced* (1). *To build* (6). *Reference* (22). *From* (25). *More* (26). *Daisies and violets* (30). *Flings* (32). *Busying* (33). PAGE 89.—*Brought Face* (14). *Marked* (18). *To find* (29). PAGE 90.—*In* (4). *Brought* (4). *Quick* (5). *Two* (6). *Now* (7). *Of* (8) and *Through* (10).

A.—PAGE 84.—*More*—substantive in the plural number, nominative case, subject to the verb "wrote." *Little*—substantive in the sing No. object of the trans verb "do know." (*Note*.—*So*—before *little* is an adverb of degree, here used as an adjective, qualifying the substantive *little*.) *These*—dem, pronoun in the nominative case, subject to the verb *are* understood. *Remain*—as it stands, agrees

with its subjects, "letter" (or "saying"), "one," and "anecdote," all connected by *and* understood between them.

PAGE 85.—*To glean*—present of the gerund infintive denoting purpose, used as an adverb modifying the adjective "able" *To have left*—press: of the noun conjunction of effect, introducing the adverbs, clause after it. *Characters*—subjective complement of "is," and same case as "he."

(NOTE.—The plural can, in Grammar, be same case as, or case in apposition with the plural, and also the *vice versa*). *These*—introductory adverb or adverbial expletive, modifying "is" after it. *To lay*—preposition of the simple inf: subjective complement of "was forced." *As*—preposition governing "actor." *Better*—adverb of quality in the comparative degree (from the positive *well*), modifying the verb "did provide."

#### Page 86.

*More than doubtful*—either parse it together as an adj: phrase qualifg: "one" (which is a dem. pronoun, same case as "application"), or parse the words separately *More* adj: of quantity in the comp: deg: (from the pos: *much*) and *doubtful* adj: of quality (both joined by the conj: *than* between them), both qualifg: "one" *Actor* and *Fitter*—same case as "him" in line 9.

*Note*—The construction is as follows:—"a fellow-playwright.....on him [while still (being) an actor &c.," *while* and *still* are both adv: modify: *being* understood]. *As*—conjunctive adverb, modify: "honest" (which together with "of.....nature" are objective complements of "described" and qualify "him"). *To bring*—pres: of the gerund: inf: denoting purpose, used as an adjective,

qualifying "him," being the objective complement of "enabled." *Subject*—same case as "drama."

### Page 87.

*Sincer*—same case as the whole clause before it, from "Green speaks.....(to).....our feathers." *Soon* modifies "was." *Of* before "Johanes"—prep: denoting apposition, governing "Johannes Factotum" in the obj: case. (*That* before this *of*, is demonstrative pronoun, case in apposition with "nickname" before it. *To take*—pres: of the gerund: inf: denoting purpose, used as an adj: qualifg: "readiness." *Heir*—same case as "Venus and Adonis" taken together as one thing. *As*—either a conjunctive or relative adverb modifying "calls," or a rel: pron: (=which), objective complement of factitive object of "calls." *Doll*—a proper noun in the 2nd person, nominative of address. *Paid*—past part: predicating "man," and used as objective complement of "wilt see" (*wilt* here denotes *resolution*—by paraphrase, as—"will you not say—'I will see this man paid'.") *To live*—ger: inf: of purpose, used as an adverb modifg: "were granted." *I*—subject to the verb *am* understood after it. *Only*—adverb here used as an adj: qualifg: "rival." *Might have equalled*—is a trans: verb having for its object *powers* understood after "Shakspeare's own." *About*—adv: (=nearly) modifg: "thirty" which parse as adj: of def: number, qualifg: *years* understood after it.

### Page 88.

*To have produced*—present of the noun infinitive used as a subjective complement of "seems." (*Note*—*a* before *year* is commonly parsed as a disguised preposition, which is quite wrong, as *a*=every, and, therefore, a distributive adjective qualfg: *year* which is adverbial object of time).

*To build*—noun inf: object of “has”. (Note—some would parse it as a gerund: inf: of purpose, used as an adverb modifying the trans: verb *has* here used intransitively by dropping the impersonal object *it* after it). *Reference*—object of *from* understood before it. *From*—governs the expression “about 1593,” where “about” is also prep: (=near) governing the substantive “1593” in the obj: case. *More*—qualifies the substantive “nothing” which may be parsed as object of the preposition of comparison “as,” or “as” may be parsed as a conjunction of apposition, introducing “nothing” in apposition with “Shakspeare.” *Daisies* and *violets*—objects of *from* understood before them. *Flings*—agrees with its subject “playwright.” *Busying*—present imperfect participle, predicating “playwright.”

#### Page 89.

*Brought*—past part: predicating “fops.” *Face*—if parsed together with “to face,” then it is part of this adverbial phrase which modifies the participle “brought;” if parsed by itself, then it is case absolute, joined to the participle *being* understood after it. *Marked*—may be parsed as a pure adjective, (if derived from the noun *mark* by adding the adjectival suffix *ed*), qualifg: “feature,” or it may be parsed as a past participle used attributively (if derived from the verb *to mark*), modifying “feature.” *To find*—gerund: inf: of purpose, used as an adverb modifying “turned.”

#### Page 90.

*In*—governs the whole expression “Every...humour,” in the obj: case. *Brought*—verb trans: having “which” for its object, and agrees with its subject “success.” *Quick*—parse it either as an adj: used predicatively,

qualifying the substantive "two," or parse it as an adj: here used as an adverb modifying "followed." *Two*, if parsed as a substantive, is in the nominative case, subject to the verb "followed," otherwise parse it as def: numeral adj: qualifying *plays* or *dramas* understood after it. *Now*—is adverb, here used as a noun, object of the prep: "till." *Of*—governs the whole expression "the...dream" in the obj: case. *Through*—governs the expression "Romeo and Juliet."

Q.—Change the following into the Indirect Form of Narration:—1 "Myself.....his art." (Page 86. lines 10—14). 2. "Doll.....Streets." (Page 87—lines 20—23). 3. "Oh.....undone." (Same pages lines 23—27).

A. 1.—Chettle answered Green's attack on him in words of honest affection, and said that he himself had seen his (Shakspeare's) demeanour no less civil than he (Shakspeare) excellent in the quality he (Shakspeare) professed; besides, he added that divers of worship had reported his (Shakspeare's) uprightness, which argued his (Shakspeare's) honesty, and his facetious grace in writing, that approved his art.

2.—He wrote to Doll, the wife he had abandoned, and charged her by the love of their youth and by his soul's rest, that she should see that man paid; for he said that if he and his wife had not succoured him (Greene), he had died in the streets.

3.—The young poet cried from his bed of death, wishing that a year had been granted him to live, but added that he must die of every man abhorred, and observed that time, loosely spent, would not again be won, that his time was loosely spent, and he was undone.



Q.—Give only a clause-wise analysis of the following :—

1. *It is owing.....works*—(Page 85, lines 3-7).
2. *He.....pit of Blackfriars*—(Page 85, lines 29-32 and page 86 line 1).
3. *If.....incorrectness*—(Page 86, lines 24-26).
4. *Beyond.....truth*—(Page 88, lines 17-22).
5. *But he.....heroes*—(Page 89, lines 11-16).
6. *In the "Two".....fasion*—(Page 89 line 34 and page 90, lines 1-5).

A.—as under :—

The clause.	Its kind and Syntax.
(1)	
A. <i>It is.....temper.</i>	Principal clause.
B. <i>That...contemporaries.</i>	Noun clause to A, case in apposition with " <i>It</i> ."
C. <i>(For) it is.....genius.</i>	Same as A, in illative co-ordination with it.
D. <i>Which.....works.</i>	Adjective clause to C, qualifying, " <i>grandeur</i> ."

NOTE.—It is therefore a mixed sentence, containing more than one (two) Principal clause and more than one (two) subordinate clause.

(2)	
A. He chides with Fortune.	Principal clause.
B. That.....means.	Adjective clause to A, qualifying " <i>Fortune</i> ."
C. (And) he.....thought	Same as A, in cumulative co-ordination with it.
D. That he.....Blackfriars.	Noun clause to C, in apposition with " <i>thought</i> ."

NOTE.—This is also a Mixed sentence like (1), and for the same reason.

The clause.	Its kind and Syntax.
(3)	
A. If there.....statement.	Adverbial clause of condition to C, modifying " <i>is</i> ."
B. That shakspeare....line.	Noun clause to A, in apposition with " <i>statement</i> ."
C. There is.....censure.	Principal clause.
D. Which ...incorrectness.	Adjective clause to C, qualifying " <i>censure</i> ."

NOTE.—It is a Complex sentence as it contains only one Principal clause, and more than one (three) subordinate clause according to some it is characterised as a Mixed Sentence.

(4)	
A. Beyond.....uncertain.	Principal clause.
B. And the conclusions can only be accepted..... ...truth.	Same as A, in cumulative co-ordination with it.
C. Which.....period.	Adjective clause to B, qualifying " <i>conclusion</i> ."

NOTE.—This shows that it is a mixed sentence having two principal clauses and one subordinate clause but there is another way of analysing it (as under) assuming some finite verbs to be understood.

A. As above.	As above.
B. And the conclusions can only be accepted.	Same as A, in cumulative co-ordination with it.
C. As approximations to the truth (are accepted).	Adverbial clause of manner to B, modifying " <i>can be accepted</i> ."
D. Which have been drawn from these.	Adjective clause to B, qualifying " <i>conclusions</i> ."

The clause.	Its kind and Syntax.
E. And (which have been drawn)...themselves.	Same as D, in cumulative co-ordination with it.
F. As well as (which &c.) ...with other plays of the period.	
G. Or (which &c.) from assumed reference to other plays of the period.	Same as E, and F, in alternative co-ordination with them.

NOTE.—This gives 2 Principal and 5 Subordinate clauses, and makes it a Mixed Sentence.

(5)

A. But he.....malice.	Principal clause in adversative co-ordination with some other foregoing principal clause.
B. (For) he sees.....soul.	
C. Which.....word-play.	Adjective clause to B, qualifying " <i>grandeur</i> ."
D. And (he) owns with a smile.	Same as A and B, in cumulative co-ordination with them.
E. That when...of heroes.	Noun clause to D, object of " <i>owns</i> ."
NOTE.—Or again, analyse it as under.	

A. But he laughs frankly.	As A. above.
B. And (he laughs) without malice.	Same as A, in cumulative co-ordination with it.
C. (For) he sees.....soul.	As B, in the first method.
D. Which underlies all this quixotry.	Adjective clause to C, qualifying " <i>grandeur</i> ."

The clause.	Its kind and Syntax.
E. And (which underlies all this) word-play.	Same as D, in cumulative co-ordination with it.
F. And (he) owns with a smile.	Same as A, B and C, in cumulative co-ordination with them.
G. That when..... life, these fops.....heroes.	Noun clause to F, object of "owns."
H. (And that when...to-face) with the suffering of man, these fops...heroes.	Same as G, in cumulative co-ordination with it.
I. (Or that when...toface with) the danger of England, these.....heroes.	Same as H, in alternative co-ordination with it.

NOTE.—Either way it is a Mixed sentence for the same reason as the others.

(6)

A. In the....ideal beauty.	Principal clause.
B. Which.....character-painting.	Adjective clause to A, qualifying either " <i>painting of manners</i> " or " <i>tenderness</i> " and " <i>beauty</i> ," both being admissible, but preferably the former.
C. Which the first.....fashion.	Adjective clause to B, qualifying " <i>character-painting</i> ."

NOTE.—It is therefore a Complex sentence containing one Principal clause two Subordinate clauses, though some call it Mixed.

6—General and Miscellaneous.

Q.—From what source has Green adopted the spelling of the great poet's name, as it *stands* in the lesson?

A.—Out of the 6 signatures left in the poet's own hand-writing, four have got the spelling adopted by Green in the text. The remaining two signatures are doubtful. His contemporaries so invariably adopt the longer spelling (*Shakespeare*) that it has as a rule been preferred, the more so as the poet himself sanctions it by permitting it to stand upon the title-pages of the only two of his works (*Venus and adonis* and *Lucrece*) which are known to have been published under his own supervision. One Shakespearean student enumerates nearly 70 different ways in which the name is spelt in legal and other documents.

Q.—What other legends, besides the deer-stealing one, are known to us of Shakspeare's youth?

A.—One story says he was apprenticed to a butcher, and when he killed a calf, he would make a speech another makes him a country schoolmaster another places him for a couple of years in the office of a Stratford attorney.

Q.—To what extent is Shakspeare supposed to have been indebted to his contemporaries?

A.—From each of his contemporaries and predecessors he gained something for his art, and he quickly surpassed them all. From Marlowe he learnt the use of the majesty of blank verse. From Greene he learnt the use of the rhymed couplet. Kyd instructed him in various pieces of rhetorical sleight of hand in verse, and Lyly taught him the prose of lively dialogue, with quick turns of wit and repartee.

Q.—Describe *Tragedy* and *Comedy*.

A.—*Tragedy* comes from two Greek words meaning a *goat* and a *song*, and is variously explained as the song at which a he-goat was sacrificed, or for which a he-goat was the prize, or in the performance of which the actors were clad in goat-skins. It is a dramatic poem (i.e., a poem representing a picture of human life acted on the stage) describing an important event, or a series of such events, where the end is sad. It originated among the Greeks about 580 B.C., in the worship of the God Dionysus or Bacchus. *Comedy*—is derived from two Greek words meaning a *revel-song* or a *village song*. It is a dramatic poem marked by mirth and jest. This also originated among the Greeks about the same time as *Tragedy*.

Q.—Comment upon the word "*nickname*".

A.—It is a current contraction or corruption of "*an eke* (=additional) *name* = a *neke name*—a *nickname*—other examples of such contractions or corruptions are *an adder* = a *nadder*; *an ewt* = a *newt*. The most remarkable instance of such contractions is perhaps the word *now-a-days*, corrupted by a similar process from *in our days* = *I'nour days*.

Q.—Distinguish between *trifling* and *trivial*, *wit* and *humour*, and a *factotum* and a *Jack of all trades*.

A.—A *trifling* thing is a thing of very little importance, while a *trivial* matter is a trifle to which great importance is attached.

*Wit*, like wisdom, signifies knowledge of a spontaneous and almost instinctive kind. It also includes pleasantry. *Humour* is a species of wit. *Wit* relates to the *matter*, and *humour* to the *manner*. A man having *wit* may

not necessarily possess *humour*, but *humour* implies wit, and is an equable and pleasing flow of it.

A *Factotum* is one who *does* every kind of work, of which is required to do it, whether he knows it or not. A *Jack-of-all-trades* is one who *knows* a little of every kind of work, but is master of none; whether he does them or not does not signify. The difference lies in *doing* (like a servant) and *knowing*. *Johannes* is the Latin form of *John* which is the national name for an Englishman. For example, *John Bull*. Observe that Greene did not call Shakspeare a *Jack of-all-trades*, but a *John Factotum*, because the poet was required to do many things, viz., hold horses, revising plays, writing dramas and acting them.

---

### 7.—Glossary.

*Abhorred*—detested; loathed.

*Affectations*—pretence; assuming.

*Anecdote*—incident; short story.

*Application*—use.

*Apprentices*—articled learners of different professions.

*Approves*—increases the value of.

*Approximate*—approaching correctness.

*Average*—the mean value or quantity.

*Brand*—a mark of infamy.

*Casual*—accidental.

*Catalogue*—list.

*Celebrity*—fame; distinction.

*Censure*—reproof; blame.

*Characteristic*—peculiar mark.

*Conjecture*—forecast; guess.

- Demcanour*—conduct.  
*Dexterous*—skilful ; adroit.  
*Diligence*—steady application ; industry.  
*Essential*—indispensable ; absolutely necessary.  
*Euphuism*—a high flown expression.  
*Extravagance*—excess.  
*Facetious*—witty ; humorous.  
*Fantastic*—whimsical ; grotesque.  
*Genial*—sympathetic ; healthful.  
*Individuality*—distinctive character.  
*Manuscript*—hand-written book  
*Masterpiece*—a work of superior excellence.  
*Motley*—a jester ; a clown.  
*Peculiarity*—singular quality.  
*Pedantries*—vain displays of learning etc.  
*Pied*—variegated.  
*Playwrights*—a paid writer of plays ; a dramatist.  
*Precludes*—shuts out ; keeps back.  
*Profusion*—extravagance ; prodigality.  
*Quixotisms*—extravagantly and absurdly romantic.  
*Rehearsal*—recital (for practice).  
*Repartee*—a smart, ready, and witty reply.  
*Retirement*—withdrawal.  
*Rhetoric*—artificial oratory or declamation.  
*Rival*—a competitor.  
*Salient*—striking ; prominent.  
*Sketched*—outlined.  
*Squabbles*—wrangles ; quarrels.  
*Subdued*—rendered submissive.  
*Succoured*—helped.  
*Suffused*—overspread ; tinged.



*Superficial*—on the surface ; shallow.

*Trait*—feature.; characteristic:

*Vagaries*—whims.

## 6. Death of Cromwell.

### INTRODUCTION.

*Expulsion*—driving out (by force). *The commons*—the members of the House of commons who formed the Rump (as it is known in History) of the Long Parliament. *England.....army*—the people of England were governed, as a matter of fact, not by civil but by military laws, that is, not the civil but the military authorities—soldiers under their officers—enforced the law. *General*—the head of the army. *A man of*—a man possessing. *Abroad*—out of England—in the continent of Europe. *At home*—in England itself. *He failed.....rule*—He did not succeed in making the people satisfied with what was at best only a government of the country by soldiers or by martial law. *Summoned*—called together by his authority as Lord Protector of the Commonwealth of England, Scotland and Ireland." *Demanded*—asked as their right. *The old liberties of England*—the liberties enjoyed by the English people in olden times, that is before 1655. The *liberties* means freedom in various matters of religion, and opinions on such matters, also in matters of the internal government of the country, prior to the time when Cromwell divided the country into the ten districts, each under the authority of a Major-General. *Restoration*—re-establishment, revival. *Constitution*—the established form of government. *The rule of law*—government under the statutes of the country

as opposed to its government by the single person as Lord Protector. *The title of King*—the kingly name, or the rank and dignity, the power and authority held by a king. *Of* here carries an adjectival force. *Forced*—compelled morally. *To refuse it*—to decline accepting the kingly title. *After*—afterwards (adverb modifying “brought,” *soon* modifies *after*). *A fever*—a particular kind of fever. *Brought.....grave*—caused his death. This is a modified form of the figure of speech Euphemism, which avoids here the use of the word ‘death.’

Page 148.

1. *No mere pcdantry*—not at all a boastful display of power only. *Still less*—much less. *Vulgar fluttery*—mean or low form of cringing. *Influenced*—moved, exercised its power over. *The Parliament*—the Protector’s second Parliament of 1655, the members of the House of Commons in this Parliament. *Offer*—proposal to give. *Experience*—the knowledge gained from what each man had passed through. *Of the last few years*—during the last few years from 1649, when Charles I was executed, to 1657, when Cromwell’s second Parliament was sitting. *The value*—the great worth. *Traditional forms*—the constitution or the whole structure of government handed down from generation to generation. *Its* the (English) nation’s. *Grown up*—acquired their fullness. *Limited*—hedged in, bounded, confined. *Constitutional precedents*—things said and done under the lawful government of the country, which serve as rules for guidance afterwards. *Prerogative*—exclusive and peculiar privilege, personal right. *It*—the opinion or belief (stated within inverted commas). *Well urged*—

rightly and forcibly put forward. *Is*—lies or exists. *Under*—regulated by. *Courts*—civil and criminal halls where justice is administered. *Bounded*—defined by boundaries. *As will*—as clearly and definitely. *And is* .....*hath*—and is as clearly and definitely defined, as a piece of land-property or some other possession of the immovable kind is described in legal documents by mentioning how far, and no further it stretches on every side. *On the other hand*—on the contrary, as opposed to this. *New*—an office having no precedent. *In our history*—in the history of the English nation. *No traditional means of limiting his power*—no previous rules handed down from generations by the help of which his (the Protector's) authority could be defined and bounded. *The one office*—the office of the king or the king by office. *Being* .....*nature*—being naturally according to law, being constitutional. *Confined and regulated*—restricted and adjusted. *Known to the nation*—of which the nation had definite knowledge. *Certain in itself*—positively precise and exact. *And the other not so*—the Protector's office not having any of these qualities. *The great ground*—the most important reason. *Bid so much* .....*title*—did so urgently press upon Cromwell to assume this rank and name (of king). *That* refers to the two offices and their nature jointly as one thing. In grammar for the sake of simplicity, *the one office* and *the other* should be disposed of as cases absolute. *Under the name*—covered by the name. *The question at issue*—the point to be decided or settled. *Indeed*—as a matter of fact, (adverb modifying "was.") *Headed by*—led by. *Officers*—of the military government. *Lawyers*—judges and barristers who were members of the House of Com-

mons. *That* - the question (whether it should or should not be a king). *Restoration...rule*—the re-establishment of a ruler, *i. e.*, the office of the king, who would govern according to the law of the land and its regulation that is to say, whether a regular and lawful king should or should not be set up again. *The proposal*—the (above) question proposed and put to the vote. *Was carried*—was passed. *Overwhelming majority*—a tremendously large number (of the members of the commons). *In endless consultations*—in perpetual deliberations; in continually ascertaining the view and opinions of the two parties, namely, Cromwell and the Commons; in a never-ending series of conference. *Good sense*—sound judgment. *The general feeling of the nation*—what the nation felt as a whole; what was the prevailing idea in the minds of most Englishmen. *Real*—true and actual. *To obtain*—to secure. *Settlement*—a final arrangement. *Secure*—ensure. *Ends*—objects. *Puritanism*—the Puritans (putting abstract for the concrete, *Fig. Synecdoche*). *Had fought*—had struggled. *Political and religious liberty*—freedom to choose and follow the puritanic form of Protestant christianity without being disabled on that account from taking part in the Government of the country; (—literally the words mean, freedom in matters of religion and state affairs). *Broke through a mist of words*—appeared in spite of the hazy way he worded his speeches. *His good sense... words*—the soundness of his discernment, the fact of his being aware of what most Englishmen felt about the question at issue, his genuine wish to gain the objects for which the Puritans had struggled (throughout the Civil War), namely that they might be free to remain Puritans

without suffering any disability as subjects of the State,—all these things forced their way and showed themselves in every meeting in spite of the obscure manner in which he worded his speeches. *Real concern*—greatest anxiety. *With*—in connection with. *Temper*—disposition and attitude. *Army*—the officers and heads of the army. *But.....army*—but what he was most anxious to know during the whole time (that the proposal to make him king was being discussed) was to find out how his military officers would look at the question. *To*—in the judgment of. *Soldiers*—the whole rank and file. *Common swordsmen*—ordinary men who knew how to use their swords.

Page 149.

*Godly*—god fearing and devout. *Beaten down*—overpowered and conquered. *A worldly and carnal spirit*—men whose disposition was full of worldly mindedness and the lusts of flesh; men whose nature was sordid and sensual. *Keep*—maintain; preserve. *Integrity*—honesty, singlemindedness. *General voice*—opinion as a class. *Recognised*—made out, perceived. *Men.....of God*—men whose opinion as a whole he regarded as voicing or expressing the will of God. *Honest and faithful*—upright and loyal. *True...Government*—who accept and follow out the important policies of the Government (authorities and powers who rule the country or the system under which the country is governed). *And though...over them*—and though it is an accidental departure on their part from their habitual state of being good to show a disinclination to bow obediently to what any particular sitting of the Parliament resolves to enact without consulting them. *Over them*—over their heads (without taking their opinion); here it implies—for them to obey. *My*

*duty and conscience*—what I owe them and my conscience. *Hard things*—difficult obligations ; orders which they will find it difficult to obey. *Put upon them*—laid on their shoulders. *Swallow*—accept entirely. *An undertaking of anything*—any step or measure. *With cause*—reasonably. *Grieve them*—hurt their feelings ; cause them pain. *Shown*—expressed, made known. *Placed* .....*hands*—sent in their commissions to Cromwell, that is, put their resignation in the hands of Cromwell. *Petition*—a formal written supplication. *Officers*—military officers (named above). *Demanded*—asked as a matter of right. *The withdrawal...monarchy*—that the motion to re-establish the kingly office should be set aside. *In the name of*—for the sake of. *The old cause*—the ancient plea. *For which*—to support which. *Bled*—shed their blood (in the Civil War). Both the sentences mean that the army did not like the idea of receiving the kingly office by offering the crown to Cromwell, and they showed their dislike by the leading generals putting their resignations in Cromwell's hands and by petitioning the Parliament to reject the proposal of re-establishing the office of the king. The words. "*in the name.....bled*"—may be taken as an adverbial expression modifying the verb. "*demanded*". *Anticipated*—provided against. *Coming debate*—approaching discussion. *On*—in connection with. *Debate*—case in apposition with the first "*debate*". *Might have led to*—might have advanced in the direction of, or, might have advanced till it reached, *An open breach*—a public rupture. *By.....crown*—to be taken again as an adverbial expression modifying the verb "*anticipated*". *This government*—this proposed mode

of governing. *That title*—that old title. *Weighty business*—important matter.

2. *Disappointed as it was*—although the Parliament failed to realise its hope. *Singular*—remarkable, unusual. *Self restraint*—self control, self-command. *Turned to*—sought. *Other modes*—other methods. *Bringing about*—securing, going. *Purpose*—object. *Had been coupled with*—had been made together with. *The condition..... constitution*—the term that he (Cromwell) should take the offer made of formal organisation of government. *Modification*—a partially altered form. *Adopted*—taken up. *The Parliament of 1654*—nicknamed as “*the Barebones Parliament*” from the name (*Praise-God-Barebones*) of one of its members who was a leather-merchant. *Emphatically approved*—strongly pronounced as good. *The things..... Government*—the provisions made by this Government measure (namely, the Instrument of Government). *Do secure*—certainly keep intact. *The liberties*—freedom in religion and in the affairs of the state. *The people of God*—here it means the Puritans. *Them*—refers to the liberties, *That*—points to title. *The act*—the measure which proposed a modified form of the constitution formerly known as “*The Instrument*”.

#### Page 150:

*Became law*—passed into law. *And.....Parliament*—and the grave ceremonies with which Cromwell's second Parliament installed him as “*Protector*”. *Was.....former rule*—was an actual avowal by Cromwell that the manner in which he had ruled the land previously (by martial law and military officers) was unlawful. *In.....commons*—by the authority of the members of the House of Commons. *Invested him*—put upon him. *Sceptre*—the ruler's staff.

*Girt*—girded, put round the waist. *Sword.....side*—the sword which was the emblem of justice, and which hung by his side. *But.....one*—but afterwards, that is, in the case of all who succeeded his successor, the Protector, was to be chosen by votes or nomination. *In.....respect*—in every thing else. *The forms of the older Constitution* the enactments belonging to the older (monarchical) plan of Government. *The other House*—the House of Lords. *Regained*—got back. *Right*—privilege. *Exclusively.....members*—settling without the interference of any one outside the commons, as to what should be the abilities and fitness of the members. *Parliamentary.....choice of*—rules were framed by the Parliament to check and regulate the choosing of. *A fixed revenue etc.*—a definite sum was settled by votes as the income etc. *Provided*—arranged or enacted beforehand. *Moneys*—sums of money. *Assent*—consent, agreement. *Liberty of worship*—freedom of the form in which to worship God. *Secured*—ensured by law. *Papists*—the name given to the Roman catholics in derision. Literally it means those who believed in the Pope. *Prelatists*—Episcopalians, that is, those who believe in that form of church government which recognises the bishops as the highest officers. *Socinians*—see Appendix Nos. 1 and 2. *The inspiration of the Scriptures*—the doctrine which taught that all the books of the Bible were written under the guidance of the Holy Spirit. (*Note*—The Socinians denied this). *Liberty of conscience*—freedom to follow what one's conscience honestly dictated.

3. *The excluded members*—those members of the House of Commons,—“one hundred in all, with Nasebig at their head,”—who were kept out for “disaffection and



want of religion", from Cromwell's second Parliament of 1655. *Admitted*—allowed to enter the House of Commons. *Adjournment*—postponement of its sitting. *After.....months*—after having postponed its sitting for 6 months. *Hasty*—thoughtless, rash. *Nominess*—those who were nominated (called and appointed by their names) by him. *The other House*—"the second House" as the House of Lords were also called. *Kindled*—caused (as fire is kindled,—a verb Metaphor). *Quarrel*—an angry dispute between the Protector and the House of Lords on one side, and some members of the House of Commons on the other. *Busily fanned*—was actively kept blazing, or in a state of excitement. (*Fanned*—is another verb Metaphor). *Squabble*—brawl, petty dispute. *The hand.....Protector*—Cromwell was dying. *Task*—irksome duty or work. *Before*—(his death)—preposition here used as an adverb modifying some participle (like *going*) understood after "a little time". *Burst out*—exclaimed suddenly and feelingly. *Wood side*—the woody marsh levels around Huntingdon where Cromwell was born, or a shady farm at St. Ives where he went afterwards. *Weariness of power*—exhaustion of mind caused by exerting the power of a ruler. *Weakness.....disease*—feebleness and restlessness caused by fever and illness. *And now.....disease*—and now (when the two Houses were quarrelling) he was not only tired by long exercise of authority, but he was also made feeble and restless by fever and illness.

#### Page 151.

*Vigorous and energetic*—full of strength and activity. *Seemed*—looked, appeared. *By no means*—not at all. *Strong*—firm. *Struck down*—smitten. *Intermittent*

*fever*—fever coming on at regular intervals. *In the midst of*—while he was surrounded (by). *Triumphs*—victories in 1649 (in Ireland) and 1650 (in Scotland). *Repeated attacks of it*—the fever attacking him again and again. *Infermities*—bodily ailments. *Over* preposition here used as an adverb to modify (and emphasise) “twice.” *At the opening etc.*,—when the Parliament began its session. *Feverish irritability*—fretfulness caused by fever. *Quickened*—sharpened. *Public danger*—peril to the people at large. *Supplies*—stores and articles required by the army. *Voted*—granted by votes in the commons. *And the pay..... arrears*—and the salaries of the men and their officers were due in large sums for the past. *Sullen*—gloomily angry and silent or silently angry. *The new constitution*—the instrument of 1655 in a new (and modified) form. *Reawakening*—stirring up. *Royalist intrigues*—plots hatched by the partisans of the king (Charles I and II). *Continuance*—continual carrying on. *Parliamentary strife*—dispute and wrangling in the two Houses of the Parliament. *An observer*—one who watched or noticed (things) closely. *Threw Cromwell into etc.*,—drove or plunged Cromwell into a furious and frantic anger. *Summoning*—ordering. *Coach*—state carriage. *Sudden impulse*—impetus felt all at once. *Setting aside*—disregarding. *Remonstrances*—warnings to dissuade him (from going). *Summoned*—sent for authoritatively. (*Note.*—This was done by an officer holding what is known as the Black Rod before the Houses). *To his presence*—before him. *Do dissolve*—break up, disperse (*do* gives emphasis). *He.....rebuke*—he ended speech which was full of passionate reproof. *And let.....me*—and let God

decide whether you (the members of the two Houses) or I am to blame.

4. *Fatal*.....*error*—although the mistake (made by Cromwell in dissolving the Parliament) was disastrous. *For*.....*well*—For the time being everything fared well, that is, no harm came of it. *Reconciled*—soothed and Pacified. *By*.....*opponents*—by the measure directed or the step taken (dissolving the Parliament) against those (in the two Houses) who opposed them or were inimical to them. *The few murmurers*—those few who complained (against Cromwell). *Weeded*—were removed (like noxious plants,—a verb Metaphor). *From its ranks*—from among the officers of the army. *By*.....*remodelling*—by carefully forming it again. *The triumphant*.....*highness*—those officers who had prevailed over their enemies declared on oath that they would prosper or perish with the Protector, that is, share with Cromwell whatever befell him. *The danger*.....*vanished*—the fear that the partisans of the king would rebel, disappeared. *Before*—in the presence of. *A host*.....*counties*—a very large number of addresses from the different shires to congratulate Cromwell on his having escaped from the conspiracies (of some of his own officers and the royalists) *Great*—important and grand. *Abroad*—out of England *i.e.*, from the continent (of Europe). *Cession*—surrender yielding. *Victory*—of the English army. *Set* .....*glory*—authoritatively and formally confirmed Cromwell's honour and fame. *The fever*—the intermittent fever (mentioned above). *Crept steadily on*—came on slowly but surely. *Looks*—appearance, or the marks that appeared on his face. *A wuft of death*—a breath or gust of wind bringing death with it; a death-dealing breath

of wind. *Go forth*—issue and flow; rush. (*Note.*—*Waft* = *waved* = *wave*.)

Page 152.

*He looked like a dead man*—he looked like a man who has already been doomed to death. (This is an exaggerated statement, and combines two Figures of speech in one: Hyperbole and Vision). *In fact*—really, as a matter of fact. *Heavy*—weighed down, bowed down, depressed. *With the sense of failure*—with the feeling, or by his feeling that he had failed to accomplish the task he had set before him. *To play the tyrant*—to act as an oppressor, to act tyrannically (Fig. Synecdoche, using the concrete for the abstract, that is, *tyrant* for *tyranny*). *Nor.....tyranny*—nor did he believe at all that oppression, simply for the sake of oppression, would ever last. *Hardly*—scarcely, barely. *Planning.....another*—forming the project of calling another (Parliament). *And.....project*—and resented the interference of the members of his council in hindering his plan (of summoning another Parliament). *I.....resolutions*—I will determine things myself and carry them out. *Gloomily*—morosely, sullenly. *House-hold*—the members of his own family. *I.....still*—I cannot any further remain contented, doing nothing. *And.....itself*—and thus incur the blame of losing the support of all upright men, and even of the whole nation (in course of time). *Realised*—reduced to practice; carried out. *Plans*—projects (for summoning another Parliament). *The.....way*—the overstrained strength of Cromwell broke down, i. e., Cromwell's strength strained more than it could bear, succumbed all at once. *-Chaos*—confusion. *Would plunge*—immerse, overwhelm. *He.....to die*—he saw

so distinctly the disorder and confusion into which England would be thrown when he was no more that he was reluctant to die. *He.....him*—he exclaimed vehemently and vigorously in the rage of the fever, to the doctors who had collected around him. *Say not*—do not tell me. *I.....reason*—that I have lost the intellectual faculty of my mind. *The truth* that I am not going to die. *It*—the truth that I am not going to die. *Better authority*—a person possessing higher power, *i. e.*, God. *Any*—any pronouncement. *Have*—obtain. *Galen or Hippocrates*—the greatest of physicians (see Appendix 1 and 2). *Recovery*—restoration to health. *Death.....nearer*—death approached with firm steps, *i. e.*, without showing any signs of turning aside. (This is a modified form of Personification.) *Hour*—time of departure from this world. *Murmured*—muttered. *Further serviceable*—still more useful. *Done*—finished. *Bore*—pulled off. *Levelled.....forest*—razed enormous trees to the ground &c. *Seemed.....prelude*—seemed a proper forerunner, *Passing etc.*,—departure of his powerful spirit from his body. *A storm.....spirit*—a fierce storm raged just before his death, pulling off the tops of houses and rooting up large trees, being thus a proper preparation for the departure of his great soul from his body. *The day.....Dunbar*—the anniversary of his gaining the battles of Worcester and Dunbar in 1651 and 1650 respectively. *Quietly*—peacefully, calmly. *Last* (breath).

---

## APPENDIX VI.

### 1 & 2. Historical and Biographical.

1. *Oliver Cromwell*—Grandson of Sir Henry Cromwell, and son of Robert Cromwell, a man of property and

an M. P., was born April 25, 1599, at Huntingdon. He was educated first at Huntingdon, and then in Cambridge. On his mother's side he was connected with the family of Hampden, and it is also asserted, with the House of Stuart. Leaving college he became a law student at Lincoln's Inn. He soon joined the Puritans, and was first returned to Parliament in 1628 for Huntingdon. In 1640 he took his seat in the Commons for Cambridge. When the Civil War broke out he threw himself heart and soul into it, and fought with a troop of his own raising at Edgehill. Being allowed by the Parliament to raise more troops composed of honest and god-fearing men he began with his own regiment which became famous as Ironsides, a name originally given to Cromwell himself for his firmness and determination. His policy was extended to the whole of the Parliamentary army, hence forth known as the New Model. Now a colonel, he distinguished himself in the battle of Marston Moor, 3rd July 1644, and Newbury. Then he became Lieutenant-General of the Parliamentary forces under Fairfax and commanded the right wing of the army at the decisive battle of Naseby, June 14, 1645. From that time to his death, September 3, 1658, Cromwell's history is the history of England. One after another he gained brilliant victories at Preston Moor, Dunbar and Worcester, besides stamping out a rebellion in Ireland after the Execution of Charles I. Cromwell then fell out with the Rump or the rag-end of the Long Parliament and dissolved it in 1653. He repeatedly summoned Parliaments, the second of which (1655) offered him the crown, on refusing which, he was made Lord Protector of England, although he was really absolute ruler of England. England was never

more suspected and feared abroad than during his Protectorship. He was never popular, and was in constant danger of assassination. But even his enemies admitted the wisdom of his domestic measures. In 1661, after the Restoration of Charles II., his remains were dragged out of their resting place in Westminster Abbey, and hanged at Fyburn by the brutal Royalists. For a long time after his death Cromwell was looked upon as a fanatic, tyrant and hypocrite, but Carlyle has banished this opinion by his *Life of Cromwell*. While his religion was a matter of the heart and soul, he was no bigot.

2. *Fox, George*, the founder of the Society of Friends, derisively called the Quakers, because they quaked or shook themselves, was born at Drayton, in Leicestershire, 1642. He was first a shepherd, and afterwards a shoemaker. When he was about 19, he became deeply convinced that he had received a call from God to preach. He wandered through the country as a religious dreamer, and clad himself with a single leather garment made by himself. In 1646 he gave up all outward forms, religious worship, and contented himself with the teaching of the 'Spirit,' urging men to trust in the 'inner light.' The Puritans hated and persecuted Fox's followers who led a simple and purely moral life. In 1655 he was brought to London, and had an interview with Cromwell who recognised an honest soul under the leathern garment, and dismissed him in a friendly way. Fox died 13th January 1691 when his 'Society of Friends' or the 'Quakers' had acquired considerable importance.

3. *Galen; Claudius*, one of the most celebrated physicians of ancient times, was born at Pergamus in Asia Minor, 131. After studying philosophy and general

literature, he travelled through Egypt and other countries in the east for the purpose of acquiring medical and anatomical knowledge. On his return he practised in his native city and then went to Rome from where he was driven out by the intrigues of his rival doctors who attributed his cures to magic. The Emperor Marcus Aurelius called him back by a mandate, and entrusted him with the work of looking after the health of his son Commodus, while he went to make war on the Germans. The time and place of Galen's death are uncertain, but he is supposed to have died in Rome about the 70th year of his age. Five large volumes of his writings are still extant, the rest having perished.

4. *Hippocrates*, the most eminent of the Greek physicians, and deservedly styled the father of medical science, was born in the isle of Cos, B.C. 460, and died B.C. 361. His memory is still venerated in his native island. He died at Larissa in Thessaly, and the highest honours were paid to his memory. Several of his works are still found, and an edition of them was printed at Leipsic so recently as 1825.

5. *Puritans* were the popular party in England in the 16th and 17th centuries, corresponding to those in other countries who brought about the Reformation. They were Protestants, but dissented from the church of England, and professed to follow the pure word of God, in opposition to all traditions and human institutions. They originally belonged to the church, but the persecutions during the reign of Elizabeth directed against this class at last drove them out of it in 1567. They were the champions of religious liberty; and to them alone it was due that religion and liberty were not totally dissovered.



Their peculiar tenets were, that the church did not belong to the state but to the people of God, whose religion is marked by purity and dignity, that the Holy Scriptures were the only source from which rules of conduct are to be drawn, and which contained all the principles guiding and regulating the church, that the church had no right to impose conditions, rites and ceremonies in matters which Christ himself had left free and unfettered. Among others more or less well-known, Cromwell, Milton and John Bunyan, author of the *Pilgrim's Progress*, belonged to this sect.

6. *Socinians*, a sect, of which Faustus Socinus belonging to a good Italian family was the founder, rose into importance in Poland, and spread gradually during the 17th century into Prussia, England and the Netherlands. Socinians deny that the books of the Bible were written under infallible supernatural guidance, and lay down as a fundamental principle of interpretation that nothing contrary to human reason can be obtained in a revelation from God, Christ and Man, which were considered misleading and erroneous by the general body of Christians. They were therefore, looked upon as heretics, and treated as such during Cromwell's Protectorate.

7. *Prelatist* or *Episcopalian* is a name given to the High Church party in the Church of England, whose distinctive doctrine, marking them off from the Presbyterians, Puritans and others, was that they looked upon the Bishops, also called Prelates and *Episcopoi*, as the supreme rulers of the Church. Archbishop Laud is said to have been the chief leader and exponent of this party. Laud was a bitter opponent of the Puritans, and the Puritans retorted upon his party during Cromwell's rule, and dep-

ri ed them of the liberty of worship, treating them no better than they treated the Papists and the Socinians.

8. *Papists* the Roman Catholics were so called by nearly all the Protestants, because they believed in the infallibility of the Pope, and were suspected to place him above Christ in fact.

9. *Royalists*—If there is any distinct period of history when this name took its rise, it may be referred to August 22nd 1642, when resolving to force a contest on the Parliament, Charles I raised the Royal standard at Nottingham, "requiring the aid and assistance of all his subjects" against the Parliamentary force. All those who fought under this banner came to be called "Royalists," although the word was in existence before this time. Generally speaking, those who took the part of king Charles I in his struggles against the Parliament from the commencement to the time when he was executed, and, specially afterwards, all those who espoused his lost cause, and the cause of his House against the Parliament, came to be called Royalists. The name opposed to "Royalists" may be said to be "Republicans", or "Parliamentarian".

Q.—Who is the writer of this piece named "Death of Cromwell?"

A.—It is taken from Green's short History of the English People, but Green acknowledges his chief indebtedness for what he has written to M. Guizot's "Republic and Cromwell", vol. i.

Q.—Give a short account of Guizot.

A.—FranCois-Pierre-Gnillaume Guizot, a French historian, was born at Nimes, 4th October 1787. At the age

of twelve he had mastered the learned languages, besides English, German and Italian. Beginning then the study of law, he published a translation of Gibbon's *Decline and Fall*. He held many high Government posts from 1812 to 1840, among which may be mentioned his ambassadorship in London. In 1848 he offended his government by the part he took in the prohibition of the Reform Banquet, and this led to his fall, and to three years of exile in England. He returned to France in 1852, and died, September 12th, 1874. He is best remembered as a historian. His literary activity extended over upward of sixty years, and in that time he produced between thirty and forty works, most of which have been translated into English. His style is manly and thoughtful and pure, but his writings are marred by an exaltation of theory over fact, and by that excessive dogmatism which got him the nickname of "Pope Guizot." His "*History of English Revolution*" in 2 volumes, which has been translated into English, furnished Green with the materials from which the "*death of Cromwell*" has been written.

### 3. Geographical and Topographical.

1. *Flanders*.—See Appendix I., 3. Geographical.

2. *Dunkirk*.—(Literally 'the Kirk or church of the dunes or downs'). It is a seaport in the department of Nord, France, on the Strait of Dover, 152 miles north of Paris. Now it is a fortified town of the third rank, possessing a tribunal, a government navigation school, a communal college, a public library and a picture gallery. The most notable buildings are the town hall, the Gottsche church of St. Eloi; the barracks, an exchange,

a military hospital and a theatre. It was burned by the English in 1388. About 1400 it was fortified, and it long continued an object of contention between France, Spain and England. In 1540 it was taken from the Spaniards by the English; in 1558 it was captured by the French, and in terms of peace restored to Spain. It was seized by the 'great Conoles', a French prince and general, in 1646, but was again regained by the Spaniards. In 1658 Turenne captured it, and according to treaty with Cromwell, it was made over or ceded to England, this being the event mentioned in the text. In 1662 Charles II sold it to France for five million livres.

33. *Worcester*, a city of Worcestershire, England, on the Severn, 22 miles S. W. of Birmingham by rail. It is a handsome town, famous for its porcelain. The place dates from prehistoric times and successively a British fort, a Roman Camp, an English stronghold, and Bishop's see from 680. Worcester espoused the royal cause throughout the Civil War; here Cromwell achieved the victory called his 'crowning mercy', 3rd September 1651, referred to in the lesson. For its constant fidelity to the royal cause, Worcester received from Charles the Latin motto still used on the city arms, meaning "The city, faithful in war, and in peace".

4. *Dunbar*—is a seaport in Haddingtonshire, 29 miles east by north of Edinburgh with which it is now connected by railway. It has a harbour called Victoria, well fitted for fishermen. It is an ancient town whose castle played an important part in the War of Independence. The battle of Dunbar alluded to in the text, in

which Cromwell defeated the Scots under Leslie, was fought September 3, 1659.

5. *Westminster* in the lesson means Westminster Hall, attached to the Houses of Parliament, in the city of Westminster which is bounded on the east by London, and on the south by the river Thames. This Hall in Westminster was ordered by Edward I as the permanent seat of Parliament, and where the law-courts also used to be until very recent times. Westminster Hall is a place of great historic interest, having been erected by William Rufus and subsequently garnished by Richard II. It consists of one huge apartment, 90 feet high and 200 feet long by 68 feet wide. The span of its wooden roof is greater than any other room in Europe, being one of the largest roofs in the world, unsupported by pillars. It was originally built for banquets and festivities. Here Sir William Wallace of Scottish fame, Sir Thomas More, Somerset, Stafford, and Charles I were condemned to death. Here Cromwell was inaugurated Lord Protector, and invested with the mantle of state. Here also took place the impeachment and trial of Warren Hastings. (*Note.*—The old Houses of Parliament were destroyed by fire in 1834, and the present magnificent Gothic Edifice at the foot of the great street called Whitehall, facing the river Thames, and forming the most splendid legislative building in the world was built from the designs of Sir Charles Barry. 900 feet long by 300 feet wide, it covers 8 acres, has 100 staircases, 1100 apartments, and 2 miles of corridors, whilst it is warmed by 16 miles of steam-pipes. Its original cost was £2000,000, but this sum has been doubled by improvements and establishments. This noble range of buildings is crowned by three great towers, two

square and one pointed. The pointed one is the Clock Tower, 320 feet high, surmounted by the belfry. The clock has four faces, each 22 feet in diameter. The bell weighs 9 tons, and is named "Big Ben." The clock is the largest in England: its figures are two feet in length; its minute-hand is 16 feet long).

6. *Hampton Court Park*—is the Park attached to Hampton Court Palace, Middlesex, on the left bank of the Thames, 12 miles S. W. of London. It is a splendid building founded by Cardinal Wolsey who lived here in great splendour. Afterwards it became a royal residence, and was enlarged by Henry VIII, and William III. Cromwell lived here occasionally during his Protectorate.

---

#### 4 & 5—Explanatory and General.

Q. —Add such explanations as may be further necessary for the better understanding of some of the passages on each page.

A —*Introduction.*—"England really lay in the power of the army"—This passage refers to the time immediately after the expulsion of the Rump, when a Council of State, consisting of 13, was appointed,—nine military officers and four civilians, with Cromwell as their president. The majority were thus military men, even if we leave out of account the 10 Major-Generals appointed by him all over England to carry out his fiscal measures.

"He made the name of England feared.....both on land and sea."—Blake's victories on the sea against Holland left England the chief sea-power of the world. Cromwell's triumph over Spain, over the Duke of Savoy,

the recognition by the United Provinces of the supremacy of the British flag, the conclusion of treaties with Sweden and Norway, all combined to make the name of England dreaded in Europe during the Protectorate.

*"But at home he failed"* &c.—It was because Cromwell was so ill-advised that he began to persecute the Royalists and the Episcopalians, the Quakers too coming in for their share of ill treatment.

*"And the Parliament ....demanded . the old liberties"*—The second Parliament of Cromwell summoned in 1655 held a long debate on the question whether to confirm the proceedings of the Major-Generals or not, and although Cromwell boldly took his stand in support of the military despotism introduced by him, the bill was rejected, and Cromwell bowed to the feeling of the nation by withdrawing the powers of the Major-Generals.

#### Page 148.

(Line 12) *"It was well urged"*—by writers like White lock, Glynne and others who spoke in the Parliament of 1655.

(Line 25). *"An over whelming majority"*—of 61 votes.

#### Page 149.

(Line 27). *"The Instrument of Government"*—This was a plan of Government composed of several rules and conditions, adopted in 1653-54, and drawn up by the Council of State. Its chief features were:—1. The House was to consist of 400 members from England, 30 each from Scotland and Ireland. 2. All special rights of voting were abolished, and replaced by a general right of suffrage. 3. Catholics and "Malignants" (those who had fought for Charles I) were excluded from the franchise.

4. The powers of the Protector were strictly limited 5. The members of the Council were removable only by their own consent. 6. With them lay the choice of all future Protectors. 7. Three years were to pass between the assembling of one Parliament and another. 8. Laws could not be passed or tax imposed but by its authority. And so on.

Page 150.

(Lines 2. and 4.)—*The Parliament and the Speaker.*  
—This is the highest legislative body of the United Kingdom of England, Scotland and Ireland, and consists of the sovereign, the House of Lords, of Commons It is supposed to be a developed assembly of the *Witenagemots* ('meetings of the wise') of ancient times when England was a cluster of separate states. At present, in numbers the House of Lords is subject to slight fluctuation, which is due to the fact that the sovereign can create at pleasure new members as lords from among favoured or distinguished commoners. It is composed of Lords Spiritual (Archbishops and bishops) and Lords Temporal, amounting to nearly 500 members. The House of Commons count over 600 members. A Parliament is called by the sovereign's writ. On the day appointed for the meeting of parliament, the sovereign sits in the House of Lords under a canopy, and the commons being summoed to the bar of that House, the sovereign addresses both Houses on the state of public affairs. The commons are then required to choose a *Speaker*, which officer being presented to and approved by the sovereign, the commons withdraw to their own House, and the business of parliament begins. In the House of Lords, across it, are woosacks, continued from ancient custom, to remind the noble



members of their country's staple industry at one time; and on the first of these, immediately before the throne, sits the Lord Chancellor, as speaker of the upper House. In the House of Commons there are no special seats for any members. The Speaker only has a chair appropriated to him at the upper end, and at a table before him sit the clerk and his assistant. The act of majority in each House binds the whole. A "*bill*" cannot pass the commons without three readings, each reading being followed by discussions, amendments and so on. Then it is sent to the House of Lords for their concurrence. When both Houses have done with any "*bill*," it is deposited in the House of Peers to wait the royal assent which is given, either in person or by letters patent, under the great seal, and duly signed. The answer to the question put by the Speaker in the commons, is *Aye* or *No*; that in the Lords is *Content* or *not content*.

(Line 24.)—"The hasty act of Cromwell"—This refers to the following incident in the history of that period:—Lord Falconbridge had married Cromwell's daughter Mary, and Robert Rich, grandson of the Earl of Warwick had married his daughter Frances. But of the members of the old House of Lords, now named by the Protector a "Second House" or the "Other House," only 7 accepted his writ of summons, and only one of these seven took his seat. Cromwell then by a "hasty act" filled up the remaining 63 seats with great civil officers, generals, and some eminent country gentlemen and citizens. By this means 40 members took their seats as quasi-lords, who would otherwise most probably have been in the commons.

## Page 151.

(Lines 28 and 29.)—“ *Victory in Flanders and the cession of Dunkirk.*”—Charles II with a large body of Spanish troops drew to the coast of Flanders at Flanders had already been defeated by a detachment of the Puritan army jointly with the French troops under the command of Turenne. Their valour and discipline were shown by a complete victory in 1658, which forced the Flemish towns to open their gates. The news of this triumph reached Cromwell when he was dying. On the 25th of May in the same year, Dunkirk was invested by the allied French and English army. Turenne was again the commander. The town was defended by the Marquis of Leyden, and Don John of Austria marched from Brussels with a Spanish force to drive back the besiegers among whom were Conde, and also the dukes of York and Gloucester. The English fought for four hours and carried the most difficult posts. The battle was another complete victory for the English, but the news of this also reached Cromwell when the fatal fever was creeping on him steadily. This double great news, however, served to put the finishing touch to his glory.

(Line 24.)—“ *The few murmurers were weeded from its ranks.*”—This refers to the disaffected soldiers encouraged by Lambert whom they desired to set up in Cromwell's place, and also to some military officers who secretly banded themselves against the Protector. The suspected officers were removed from the army, and Lambert's plot was frustrated by Colonel Hutchinson.

(Line 27.)—“ *A host of addresses from the counties.*”—These were congratulatory addresses from the different shires sent to the Lord Protector Cromwell on his escape

from the above mentioned plot as well as another conspiracy of wild apprentices and other rash persons, settled by the Lieutenant of the Tower, who came out with five pieces of artillery. The ring leaders were seized at the Mermaid Club in Cheapside. Others were arrested in the country. Fifteen were arraigned, amongst whom were Sir Henry Slingsby, and Dr Hewit, an episcopal divine, Six were condemned of which number three suffered besides the two men of note named above, to save whose lives the highest interest was made, but all in vain.

Q.—Explain the special meaning attached to the following expressions:—1 “*Liberties of the people of God*” (page 149 lines 30 and 31.) 2. “*The old liberties of England*”—(page 148 line 2.) 3. “*Traditional forms*”—(line 10). 4. “*Liberty of conscience*”—(page 150 line 21). 5. “*Life Guards*”—(page 151 line 33). 6. “*The King's prerogative*”—(page 148 line 12). 7. “*The courts of justice.*” 8. “*Constitutional and legal rule*”—(page 148 line 24.).

A—1. (Page 149 lines 30 and 31).—Here the people of God are the Puritans whom Cromwell had especially in view, and liberties mean freedom of their actions in matters religious and political. It was desired by the Protector that they were not to be hampered in any way how they worshipped God, and that their mode of worship should not stand in the way of their employment in any capacity in the state.

2. (Page 148. line 2.)—The liberties which Englishmen secured and enjoyed from ancient times. Special allusion is here intended to the Great Charter which the nation obtained from King John in 1215, and the two

famous terms of which, among others equally important, were the following:—No freeman shall be seized or imprisoned, or dispossessed, or outlawed, or in any way brought to ruin: we will not go against any man nor send against him, save by legal judgment of his peers or by the law of the land." "To no man will we sell, or deny, or delay, right or justice"

3. (Page 148. line 10). It means such institutions as the Houses of Parliament, the Courts of Justice, and the laws and statutes which have been handed down of old from generation to generation.

4. (Page 150. line 21).—"Liberty of conscience." also called "freedom of conscience" is closely allied to "liberty of worship," all these expressions referring more or less remotely to two distinct periods of history first to the time when the Act of Supremacy and the Act of uniformity were passed in 1559, and secondly when Laud began to persecute the Puritans, and drove them from the Church. Cromwell took care when he came into power to secure that no such tyrannical law should be in operation against any one who wished to follow the dictates of his conscience in worshipping God.

6. (Page 148 line 12). Also called the "royal prerogative," is that special and exclusive pre-eminence which a sovereign has, not only over other persons, but also over the ordinary course of the common law, in right of the regal dignity. Among these are the right of appointing ambassadors, and of making peace and war. But these rights are all definitely described, and the sovereign cannot claim others in addition.

7. Justice here means *distributive* justice, and the courts where this kind of justice is distributed or adminis-

tered are the King's Bench, the Common Pleas, the Exchequer, the Chancery, the Probate, Divorce, and Admiralty divisions, nearly all of which were in those days located in Westminster Hall, and called the law courts.

8. The King's rule as defined and specified by the laws of England, and the fundamental rules of English Government.

9. (Page 151 line 33.)—Guards in a particular sense mean the troops that are designed to guard the royal person and palace, and which consist both of horse and foot. In England the house-hold guards consist of the *life guards*, the royal regiment of *horse-guards*, and three regiments of *foot-guards*, viz, the Grenadier guards, the Cold stream Guards, and Scots Fusilier Guards. The Life Guards are tall men in shining steel breastplates, and helmets, and are mounted on tall horses. Cromwell as Lord Protector was entitled to the service of these.

Q.—Give the Synonyms of the following words occurring in your lesson, and distinguish them clearly from one another:—

*Rule, fear, at last, honest, answer, wrighty, business, purpose, acknowledge, act, vigorous, danger, rebuke, error, tyranny, project, reason, and continual.*

A. 1. *Rule, Law, Statute, and Regulation.* A law is a 'rule' formed by the Government of a country. A nation is governed by laws; a household by rules. A *statute* is a 'law' solemnly and formally enacted, and distinctly set forth in words. The bye-laws of a university are also called 'statutes.' A *regulation* is the enactment of a subordinate body. *Rule* sometimes implies a governing force or power; as, 'we live under a stern or

gentle rule.' *Law* denotes some *invariable custom* ; as 'the laws of nature.'

2. *Fear, Fright, Terror, Alarm, Dread* and *Apprehension*. *Fear* is the general term which includes many of the rest. It is consciousness of danger actual or possible. *Fright* is paralysing 'fear' which takes complete possession of the mind. *Terror* is 'fright' in a stronger degree. *Alarm* is sudden 'fear' of immediate danger. *Dread* is more definite and more intense 'fear.' *Apprehension* simply implies the consciousness of danger.

3. *At last* and *At length*—The former means *after many interruptions*, and the latter, *after a long time or delay*.

4. *Honest, Sincere* and *Upright*. *Honest* means straight forward and fair in conduct. *Sincere* means two things alternatively : either real in conviction, and earnest in purpose, or free from all unfairness. One, for example, may be *sincere* in one's desire to gain one's end, and at the same time *not honest* in the means one employs to gain that end. *Upright* implies honesty and dignity of character, and is the opposite of being 'mean.'

5. *Answer* and *Reply*—an *answer* gives what is asked, but a *reply* is merely something said in return. An *answer* is or should be satisfactory as it furnishes something which serves the purpose. A *reply* does not satisfy the questioner. For example, 'What is your name?' *Answer* :—'John,' *Reply* :—'Why do you ask?' or something equally far from the point.

6. *Weighty* and *Heavy*—The former literally means 'having (much) weight,'—a fact which makes things *heavy*—Figuratively we speak of 'weighty reasons' and

'heavy cares.' *Heavy* in the figurative sense implies *blame* or *trouble*, e.g., 'his arguments were *weighty* but John's discourse was *heavy*.'

7. *Business* and *occupation*. *Business* is necessary, or, at least, important and pressing *occupation*—The latter means any thing which employs us or keeps us employed, either at the moment or habitually; it may be amusing or agreeable. But *business* implies duties in life, pleasant or otherwise.

8. *Purpose*, *Intent* and *Intention*. *Purpose* implies the use of some means towards an end, but *intention* does not. For instance, he had the *intention* of killing his enemy, and for this *purpose* he brought a knife. *Intent* and *intention* are much the same in signification. *Intent* was used in old English where *intention* would now be employed. *Intention* was never used in old English except in a logical and a technical sense; as, first or second *intentions* (logically in old English); and the 'doctrine of intention.' *Intention* now denotes inward will, more or less strong.

9. *Acknowledge*, *Confess*, *Own* and *Avow*. We *acknowledge* when we declare ourselves to be the authors of some action already known. And we *confess* when we make a declaration of some action not yet known to others. *Avowing* is used in the sense of *acknowledging*. *Avowing* is boldly, frankly acknowledging what we are never ashamed of. We *confess* our faults, errors or weakness, and we *acknowledge* or *own* what we are charged with.

10. *Act*, *Action*, and *Deed*—An *act* does not necessarily imply an external result but an *action* always does.

*Act* is an operation of the mind. *Action* is external. *Deed* is that which is done,—the result of an ‘action.’

11. *Vigorous*, *Strong*, *Powerful* and *Forceible*. *Vigorous* implies powers of mind or body in an active state. *Strong* implies a sound, firm constitution capable of enduring much. *Powerful* implies the ability to exert one’s physical force actively and to perform feats of strength. A *powerful* man must be ‘strong,’ but a *strong* man is not necessarily ‘powerful.’ *Forceible* never describes qualities of body or mind, but only the individual efforts which mental or bodily qualities may call forth. It is generally applied to mental efforts, but sometimes it denotes violence and coercion. Thus we speak of a *strong* or *forceible* expression, also of making a ‘forceible entry.’ But a ‘strong expression’ is only vehement where as a ‘forceible expression’ is strong (vehement) and also just what is wanted.

12. *Danger*, *Peril* and *Hazard*. *Danger* implies both moral and physical risk. It is generally passive, though sometimes active. An illness is ‘dangerous’ in an active sense. An immoral book is also ‘dangerous’ passively. *Peril* always conveys the idea of *physical risk* in an *active* and *not in a passive* sense. *Hazard* is risk *actively* incurred, either moral or physical. Thus we speak of a ‘hazardous attempt or expedition.’

13. *Rebuke*, *Reproof*, *Censure*, *Reproach*, *Reprimand* and *Remonstrance*. *Rebuke* is strong *reproof*. *Reproof* is admonition expressing disapprobation, addressed to one beneath us in age or station. *Censure* is finding fault with the conduct of a public man, and is never applied to an inferior. *Reproach* is personal, and satisfies the feeling of the person who gives it. It may



be given by an inferior to his superior or by a superior to his subordinate. *Reprimand* is always addressed to inferiors and carries some threat and force. *Remonstrance* is argumentative advice intended to dissuade a person from doing a thing. It has a *future* reference, and is thus the opposite of *censure* which refers to the *past*.

14. *Error, Mistake and Blunder*—*Error* implies some action always which is *blamed*, either morally or intellectually. It may proceed from failure of judgment, but blame is always attached to it. An 'error' is always a *mistake*, but a 'mistake' is not always an error, nor is the person to be blamed who commits a 'mistake;' a 'mistake' may even be *fortunate* at times. A *blunder* is a 'mistake' committed in spite of *knowledge* possessed to prevent its commission. A 'blunder' in spelling means a 'mistake' in spite of the knowledge of the rules of Orthography and Etymology. To 'blunder' in the dark is an exceptional use of the word, for want of a better expression.

15. *Tyranny and Despotism*—Both words imply absolute power exercised for the pleasures of the governor, and not for the benefit of the governed. But *despotism* implies legal power, and *tyranny* the abuse of such or other power. *Despotism* draws attention to the kind and extent of the power, while *tyranny* points to the severe and harsh use of that power. Originally, *tyranny* had no meaning of severity or harshness attached to it, meaning only absolute power inherited or usurped. But in course of time all kings having the title of a Tyrant were found to exercise this power harshly, and so, a tyrant came to mean a harsh, severe and oppressive ruler.

16. *Project, Design, Scheme and Plan.*—All these words imply a certain object or end in view, and the means employed to gain it. *Design*—looks more to the end than to the means, while *scheme* and *plan* look most to the means, and least to the end; *project* occupies a place between and betwixt these. *Scheme*—implies something fully formed and sketched out, and *plan* is a more advanced and developed form of 'scheme.' For example: they formed a *project* of overthrowing the Government, and with this *design* they concocted a *scheme*; they then met together to mature their *plan*.

17. (a) *Reason Sense and Understanding.* *Reason* means three things, not all together, but separately. First, it denotes *all* the intellectual powers collectively. Secondly, it denotes all those powers which distinguish man from brutes. Thirdly, it means the *arguments* addressed to the reasoning faculty. In this last sense we say, 'hear *reason*.' *Reason* in the *second* sense enables us to hear *reason* in the *third* sense. *Sense* and *understanding* are used for a certain amount of 'reason.' *Sense* is, however, both active and passive, while *understanding* is only passive, and means a clear perception of what is put before us. A stupid man is wanting in *sense*; one who is blinded by passion or prejudice shows want of *reason* for he does not make use of the *sense* he possesses. 'Good *sense*' or 'good understanding' is the possession of a large share of 'reason.'

17 (b) *Reason, Cause, Source and Origin.* *Reason* in this sense means a logical sequence. It is the 'cause,' not of any thing existing, but of our *knowing* or *believing* it. The footprint, for instance, of a man is not the cause of his having passed that way, but of our knowing it.

*Cause* is that physical means or agency which produces an effect or result. *Source* is that 'origin' from which we have derived something, and which still continues to supply it. *Origin* is that 'source' which supplied us with something, but which has now passed away.

18. *Continual* and *Continuous* and *Perpetual*—a *continual* action is that which is constantly renewed and recurring, though it may be interrupted as frequently as it is renewed. A *continuous* action is one which is uninterrupted, and goes on unceasingly as long as it lasts. "Continuous rain" is rain without any stopping, so long as it lasts. 'Continual rain' is a succession of showers. *Perpetual* is a stronger form of 'continual,' and 'continuous,' both combined. A 'perpetual motion' means motion which is still *more* constantly recurring, and which is also at once 'continuous' and lasting.

### 6 — Grammatical.

Q.—Distinguish between *though* (page 149. line 5.) and *Although*.

A.—These two conjunctions or particles nearly approach each other in meaning, but the latter,—*although*,—is much more emphatic than *though*, and employed in the beginning of a clause or sentence more or less formal and logical in its language.

Q.—Give the required parsing of the following words:—

*Introduction*.—*Ruler* (line 3), *feared* (5), *both* (6), *to reconcile*, *to*, *but* (7), *to restore* (page 148. line 3.), *Cromwell* (4) and *to refuse* (5).

### Page 148.

*Value* (line 10), *is* (13), *acre*, *anything* (14), *limiting* (16), *that*, *was* (19), *liberty* (30) and *was* (32).

## Page 149.

*To be*, *to submit* (line 6), *to beg* (8), *to restore* (15), *disappointed* (23), *bringing about* (24) and *purpose* (25).

## Page 150.

*To name* (line 7), *after*, *to be* (8), *members* (11), *deciding* (13), *but* (18), *but* (19), *giving* (24), *before* (30), *to have kept* (31) and *than* (32).

## Page 151.

*Will* (line 3), *reawakening* (12), *like*, *summoning* (15), *be*, *judge* (20), *fatal* (22), *remodelling*, *to stand* (25), *on* (30), *go and forth* (34).

## Page 152.

*Like* (line 1), *to play*, *tyrant* (3), *angry* (6), *to sit*, *guilty* (9), *itself* (10), *gave way* (12), *to be* (13), *to die* (14), *round* (15), *any* (16), *himself* (18), *even*, *come* (20), *to be* (21), *prelude* (25), *days*, *later*, *third* (26) and *day*.

*A.—Introduction.—Ruler*—same case as “General” (with which “Cromwell” is case in apposition). *Fearful*—part participle predicating “name,” and used as obj: complement of the factitive turns: verb “made.” *Both*—coord: conjunction of the cumulative kind, joining “land” and “sea,” with its correlative pair “and” between the nouns. *To reconcile*—pres: of the simple inf:; object of “failed.” *To*—prep: governing the whole noun clause (*what.....rule*) after it. *But*—adverb (=only) modifying “was.” *To restore*—pres: of the gerund: inf: (also called the dative infinitive) denoting purpose, modifying “was” of which it is also the subjective complement. *Cromwell*—indirect (or dative) object of

"offered." *To refuse*—present of the noun infinitive retained object of "was forced."

Page 148.

*Value*—direct object of "had taught." *Is*—intrans: verb of incomplete predication (although it means *exists*) having the prep: phrase after it ('*under.....justice*') as its subjective complement. *Acre*—nominative case, subject to the verb *is* understood after it. *Anything*—substantive in the nominative case, subject to the verb *is* understood after it. *Limiting*—present imperfect gerund, transitive; (having "power" for its object) in the objective case, governed by the preposition "of." *That*—demonstrative pronoun, subject to the verb "*was*" which is intransitive of incomplete predication, having "ground" for its subjective complement. *Liberty*—case in apposition with "ends" (in grammar the singular may be in apposition with the plural, and the *vice versa*, but here *liberty* is plural in sense, as it means two kinds of liberty, political and religious). *Was* (=lay or existed)—intransitive verb of incomplete predication, having the preposition phrase after it ('*with.....army*') as its subjective complement.

Page 149.

*To be*—present of the noun infinitive, case in apposition with "*it*." *To submit*—present of the gerund infinitive denoting purpose, used as an adverb, modifying the adjective "unwilling." *To beg*—simple infinitive in apposition with "*it*." *To restore*—gerundial infinitive of purpose, used as an adjective qualifying "proposal." *Disappointed*—past part predicating "*it*," and used as subjective complement of the verb "*was*." *Bringing*—pre-

sent imperfect gerund, object of "of." *About*—preposition here used as an adverb, complement of the gerund "*bringing*," with, which together it governs its object. *Purpose*—objective case, governed by the gerund "*bringing*" in conjunction with its complement "about."

## Page 150.

*To name*—simple infinitive, retained object of the passive verb "was allowed." *After*—preposition used as an adjective qualifying "cases." *To be*—gerundial infinitive of purpose used as an adverb modifying "was" of which it is also used as a subjective complement. *Members*—case absolute (joined to the participle "being named." *Deciding*—present imperfect gerund (transitive used intransitively) in the objective case, governed by the preposition "of." *But* (=except)—preposition governing the phrase "by assent of Parliament," after it, in the objective case. *But*—preposition governing "Papists, Prelatists, Socinians or those." *Giving*—present imperfect gerund (from the dative transitive verb *to give*) having "nominees" for its indirect, and "title" for its direct object, itself in the objective case, governed by the preposition "in." *Before*—adverb, modifying the adverbial expression "a little time." *To have kept*—gerundial infinitive of purpose, used as an adverb, modifying the adjective "glad." *Than*—preposition, governing the simple or noun infinitive "to have undertaken" in the objective case.

## Page 151.

*Will*—nominative case, subject to the verb "was" understood after it. *Reawakening*—pres: imp: gerund in the objective case, governed by the preposition "at." *Like*—adjective of quality in the positive degr

used attributively, qualifying "rage" and "passion."  
*Summoning*—pres: imp: participle, predicating  
 "Protector." *Be*—present of the simple or noun  
 infinitive (to understood after the verb "let"), indirect  
 object of the verb "let." *Judge*—same case as "God,"  
 used as subjective complement of "(to) be." *Fatal*—  
 adjective used predicatively, qualifying "error," and used  
 as subjective complement of "was." *Remodelling*—  
 pres: imp: gerund (transitive used intransitively) in  
 the objective case, governed by the prep: "by." *To*  
*stand*—noun infinitive in the objective case governed by  
 the transitive verb "vowed." *On* (=onward)—prep:  
 used as an adverb modifying "crept." *Go*—noun infini-  
 tive (to understood after the verbs "saw" and "felt.")  
 objective complement or factitive object of "saw" and  
 "felt." *Forth*—adverb of quality in the pos: deg: modi-  
 fying the verb "(to) go."

Page: 152.

*Like*—Parse it either as a prep: governing "man" in  
 the objective case, or as an adjective, used predicatively,  
 qualifying "he," in which case "man" would be governed  
 by the prep: "to" understood before it. *To play*—noun  
 infinitive,—full parsing:—verb, regular, active, intransi-  
 tive used transitively (having "tyrant" for its informal  
 cognate object), present of the gerundial infinitive of  
 purpose, used as an adjective qualifying "desire." *Ty-*  
*rant*—(with "the" joined to it—an abstract noun,  
 otherwise, without "the," a common noun) informal  
 cognate object of "to play." *Angry*—adjective used  
 predicatively, qualifying "he" before "was" of which it  
 is used as the subjective complement. *To sit*—(=by  
 sitting, present of the gerundial infinitive, denoting

cause (and *not purpose*), used as an adverb, modifying "can satisfy." *Guiltily*—adjective of quality, pos: deg: qualifying "myself" and used as objective complement of the factitive transitive verb "(can) make." *Itself*—Reflexive form of the demonstrative pronoun, case in apposition with "nation." *Gave way*—if parsed separately, there is no difficulty, "way" being the object of "gave," but the words can be parsed together as an intransitive verb—incumbent agreeing with its subject, "strength." *To be*—present of the gerundial infinitive denoting effect (and *not purpose*). ("too clearly to be" = so clearly *that he was not*) used as an adverb, modifying the adverbial phrase "too clearly." *To die*—gerundial infinitive of purpose, used as an adverb modifying the adjective "willing." *Round*—adjective used as a prep: (=around) governing "him" in the objective case. *Any*—indef: numeral adjective qualifying *authority* or *authorities* understood after it, or, indef: numeral pronoun; or again, indef: demonstrative pronoun, in the singular or plural number, both being possible, according to as *authority* or *authorities* is understood and referred to, in the objective case, governed by the prep: "than." *Himself*—reflexive form of the personal pronoun, or personal pronoun used reflexively, case in apposition with "God." *Even*—an adverb expressing, emphatically, identity of person, modifying "Cromwell." Some would parse it as an adverb used here as an adjective qualifying "Cromwell." *Come*—past participle, predicating "hour," and used as subjective complement of "was." (*Note*—"was come" must not be parsed together). *To be*—gerundial infinitive of purpose, used as an adverb modifying "to live." *Prelude*—same case as "storm," and used



as subjective complement of "seemed." *Days*—adverbial object of time: *Later*—adjective of quality, comp: degree, used attributively, qualifying "days." *Third*—definite numeral adjective of the ordinal kind, qualifying *day* understood after it, or, substantive in the objective case, governed by the prep: "on." *Day*—case in apposition with, or, same case as the substantive "third" or *day* understood after "third." (*Note*—it is case in apposition with the substantive "third," if *namely* is understood before it, or, it is same case as "third," if *being* be understood before it).

Q.—Change the following sentences from the direct into the indirect form of narration :—1. "The one office .....title"—(page 148. lines 16-21). 2. "They are honest.....grieve them"—(page 149. lines 4-11). 3. "Do not think.....prayers!" (page 152. lines 14-19).

A—1. Glynne said that the one office.....not so,—that had been the great ground why the Parliament had so much insisted on that office and title. 2. He urged that they were honest and faithful men, true to the great things of the Government, and that though it was really no part of their goodness to be unwilling to submit to what a Parliament should settle over them; yet it was his duty and conscience to beg of them that there might be no hard things put upon them which they could not swallow. 3. In an outburst of feverish energy he told the physicians who had gathered round him, not to think that he would die, and not to say that he had lost his reason; that he told them the truth; that he knew it from better authority than any they could have from Galen or Hippocrates; that it was the answer of God himself to their prayers.

Q.—Give a clause-wise and word-wise analysis of the following sentences in tabular forms :—

- 1.—“His good sense..... of words.”—(page 148.  
lines 27—31.)
  - 2.—“The offer of the crown...approved”—(page 149.  
lines 25—29.)
  - 3.—“The excluded members...Haselrig”—(page 150.  
lines 22—26.)
  - 4.—“Vigorous and energetic...attacks of it”—(page  
151. lines 1—6.)
- A.—See the last page.

### 7.—Glossary.

*Adjourned*—postponed.  
*Anticipated*—forestalled.  
*Cession*—yielding up.  
*Chaos*—confusion, disorder.  
*Constitution*—the established form of Government.  
*Consultation*—deliberation.  
*Elective*—exerting the power of choice or, subject to choosing.  
*Expulsion*—driving out.  
*Inauguration*—installation.  
*Infirmities*—weaknesses or, causes of weakness.  
*Integrity*—uprightness.  
*Intermittent*—ceasing at intervals.  
*Intrigues*—complex plots.

*Irritability*—fretfulness.  
*Modification*—slight alteration.  
*Nominees*—persons named for appointment.  
*Pedantry*—vain display.  
*Permanence*—continuance.  
*Petition*—a formal written request.  
*Precedents*—parallel cases in the past serving as examples to follow.  
*Prelude*—forerunner.  
*Prerogative*—peculiar right or privilege.  
*Reconcile*—reunite, to bring back to an agreement.  
*Remodelling*—fashioning anew.

<i>Resolution</i> —fixed deter- mination.	<i>Sullen</i> —silently angry.
<i>Squabble</i> —wrangle, dis- pute.	<i>Waft</i> —a puff of breeze.
<i>Summoned</i> —commanded to appear.	<i>Weeded</i> —removed as an offensive and injurious thing.

---

THE END.





# THE PILGRIM FATHERS.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

*Bancroft George* a leading American historian was born 3rd October 1800 near Worcester, Massachusetts. He studied at Harvard College and from there went to Germany where he came into contact with Hegel, Goethe and other learned men of the time. On returning to America he threw himself into historical literature and politics, declaring himself a keen democrat. He wrote several historical works which he incorporated in his *History of America* one of the best written, and, at the same time, most substantial and accurate historical works of the present time. *Elizabeth*, Queen of England, the daughter of Henry VIII and Anne Boleyn was born 7th September 1533. She has been one of the greatest rulers England has had. She raised it from an obscure kingdom to a first-class European Power. From the reign of Elizabeth may be said to date the material prosperity, the naval power the commercial activity, and the literary glory of Great Britain. She never married and died a lonely old maid in her seventieth year March, 24, 1603. *James I* of England, VI of Scotland, was the son of Mary, Queen of Scots by her second husband Henry Stewart Lord Dornby. He was born at Edinburgh 19th June 1566. In 1603 he succeeded to the English throne. He was ungainly in appearance and undignified in bearing and believed in the theory of the divine right and absolute authority of kings. All these things made him very unpopular with his subjects. He was called by a contemporary king 'the wisest fool in christendom.' He died 27th March 1625.

*Broke with English religion*—severed his connection with, i. e., separated from the Church of England. *Sowed the first seeds of the strife*—was the first to give cause for offence which ultimately led to a quarrel. *The Great Rebellion*—the Civil War of 1642-46 in which the opposing parties were Charles I and the Parliament. The men on the king's sides were called 'cavaliers' while those on the opposite party were called 'Round-heads'. It ended in Charles I being taken prisoner and beheaded after which a republic was established under Oliver Cromwell who was called the 'Protector'. *Perscution*—cruel and harsh treatment *Who would not conform to the Church*—who would not comply with the usages of the Established Church. *A great result*—a very important result. *It drove some of them to the New World*—it caused many of them to emigrate to America. *Their foundation.....United States*—the future of the United States was given a permanent shape and form by the founding of colonies in America by these emigrants.

Para. 1. *Opening*—beginning. '*A poor people*—people belonging to the lower middle classes. *Nottinghamshire*—one of the premier manufacturing Midland counties. *Lincolnshire*—the county of fens, famous as the birthplace of Tennyson. *Yorkshire*—the biggest of the northern counties. *Had 'become enlightened by the word of God'* an expression peculiar to the Puritans meaning, had received the light of saving knowledge from the Bible. *They were.....profane multitude*—They were made fun of and looked down upon by the people in general whom the Puritans regarded as very unholy and impious. *Urged with the yoke of subscription*—goaded to resistance because they were forced to subscribe a declaration of conformity to the Liturgy by the Act of Uniformity. *The beggarly ceremonies were monuments of idolatry*—The Puritans considered the rituals observed by the Church of England in their

service to be a form of idol-worship. *Prelates*—Dignitaries of the Church, bishops. ‘*Whose hearts the Lord... ..truth*’—who have been inspired by God with a fervent love for his truth. *Resolved*—made up their minds. *Whatever it might cost them*—at any cost, i. e., without any fear of the consequences whatever they be. *To shake off the anti-Christian bondage*—to free themselves from the yoke of subscription which in their opinion was opposed to the tenets of Christianity. *To join themselves.....gospel*—to make a compact among themselves to form themselves into a body belonging to one Church having a feeling of brotherly love for one another as enjoined by the Gospel. *Of the same faith with Calvin*—the faith of Calvin or Calvinism is a revival of the scheme of doctrine originated by Augustine. The two postulates of that scheme were *original sin* depending on the fall, and the *irresponsible sovereignty* of God. From these premises it was argued by Augustine that an absolute *election* on the part of God of certain individuals to eternal life was not unjust, since, all being transgressors, all might justly have perished, and it necessarily followed that all the rest were *reprobated* to eternal damnation. *Calvin, John* was born at Noyon in Picardy, 10th July 1509. From an early age Calvin had been destined for a clerical profession. He did join the Church and gained several livings in it but at the age of twenty he came under the influence of a fellow townsman and old companion and took a distaste for the Church and went to Orleans to study Law. He removed from there to the University of Bourges and there he became confirmed in his dissatisfaction with the Church of Rome and eventually became known as a Huguenot and had to quit France at the age of twenty-five (1534) in order to escape from the persecutions of the French King. He settled at Basel and from here he wrote his ‘*Christiana Religionis Institutio*’ a defence of the French Protestants against the slander-



ous charges of the French King. This made him so famous that he was asked by Farel the head of the Genevese Protestants to become his assistant. He settled at Geneva in 1536, and became the head of the French Protestants. So great was his influence with them that towards the middle of the 16th century they got the name of Calvinists. He was driven out of Geneva in 1538 on account of some very strict laws that he had made which the people felt to be intolerable. He was invited back to the city in 1541 and at once became the virtual ruler of Geneva and so he remained till his death in 1564. *Heedless of Acts of Parliament*—they did not care in the least about obeying the laws framed by Parliament, i. e., they were not afraid of the penalties for disobedience. *Rejected*—refused to have anything to do with. *Canons*—rules. *Renouncing*—refusing to acknowledge. *Asserted for themselves*—laid claim to have. *Walk in all the ways .....them*—to live their lives according to that religion which they said God had made known to them.

Para. 2. *The reformed Church*—the new church established by these people who were afterwards known as Prebyterians. *A man not easily to be paralleled*—a man whose equal it was difficult to find. *Polished*—cultured. *Stay*—support. *Beset and watched*—surrounded and spied upon. *The agents of prelacy*—men in the employ of the dignitaries of the Church. *Notwithstanding..... adversaries*—in spite of the watchfulness and hatred of their enemies. *As the humane..... bigotry*—as kind people always refuse to bring into force laws which are the outcome of intolerance, i. e., laws that have been framed by men who are obstinately and blindly attached to a certain creed and cannot tolerate any one who has a different creed to theirs. *The office devolves.....savage*—the work falls upon or has to be done by either a man who is excessively enthusiastic about the religion which has fram-

ed those laws or a man who is a brute and therefore incapable of feeling for the suffering of others. *Hence* .....*authors*—On account of this the manner in which these laws were enforced was much harsher than the people who framed those laws intended them to be. ‘*The poor persecuted flock of Christ*—one of the names by which the Presbyterians referred to themselves. *Despairing of rest in England*—losing all hope of ever being allowed to follow their own religion in peace in England. *Resolved to go into exile*—made up their minds to emigrate to another land.

Para. 3. *Was effected*—was accomplished. *Hazard*—risk. *Checked the ferocity*—stopped the brutish cruelty. *Subordinate officers*—the lower officers who enforced the law. *Detained*—kept back. *The design was renewed*—they started making plans afresh to leave the country. *As if it had been*.....*persecution*—as though to make an effort to save oneself from cruel and unjust treatment was equivalent to committing a crime. *Unfrequented heath*—lonely moor or stretch of barren uncultivated ground. *Was bearing*.....*ship*—was taking some of their number to the ship. *Who had not* .....*surf*—who had not yet risked crossing the surf to get to the ship. *Surf*—the waves breaking against the land. *Heavy case*—sad condition. *Distress*—trouble. *Apprehended*—arrested. *To be rid of them*.....*terms*—to get them off their hands on any condition. *Endured misery enough*—suffered great hardships. *Such was the flight of*.....*Brewster*—it was in this manner that Robinson and Brewster fled from their native land.

Para. 4. *Amsterdam*—(the dam of the Amstet), the capital of the Netherlands and chief city in the province of Holland, stands on the south bank of the Ij or Y an arm of the Zindezee, where the Amstet flows into. The city was a mere fishing village in the 12th century. It rose into importance however,

and became the most important commercial town in the Netherlands. Down to the French Revolution it continued to be one of the first marts in Europe for the products of the East and the West. The manufactures of Amsterdam are very important the oldest and most famous of them being the cutting of precious stones. *Pilgrims*—This word is put in capital in order to emphasise the fact that they fully knew that world was not their abiding and that they were journeying through it to go to a 'better country,' Heaven. *Their dearest country*—their best-loved country. *Quieted their spirits*—calmed themselves.

Para. 5. *But*—here equivalent to only. It is to be parsed as an adverb modifying the Relative adverb *as* which is to be parsed as Relative adverb modifying the verb *do* understood. *Crosses and sorrows*—burdens and sufferings. *Scatter*—get separated from one another. *Sink*—die. *Decrepid in early youth*—on account of their sufferings they looked in their youth as though they were broken down and wasted by the infirmities of old age. *Conscious of ability.....humanity*—they knew and felt that they had the power to perform better parts and occupy nobler places than they were doing in the history of the world. *Moved*—urged. *Inward zeal*—hearts full of enthusiasm. *Of advancing.....new World*—of spreading Christianity in the most distant parts of America. *Though they work*—even though they knew that they themselves would never live to accomplish this project fully they still had the satisfaction of being conscious that they were the pioneers who had made the way easier for those who would follow them. *Stepping-stones*—are stones placed in a shallow stream or a wet place to enable people to cross over easily and without wetting themselves.

Para. 6. *They made ready for their departure*—they made preparations to leave for America. *A minority*

of the congregation—a very small part of the congregation. It really means the smaller part of the congregations. *Detained*—kept back. *Leyden*—a well built town in the Dutch province of S. Holland on both sides of the old Rhine. It was the birth-place of the painters Rembraudt, Dow Metryn and Mieris and is the seat of an University founded in 1575 and connected with many great names as Grotius, Descartes and Ruhuken. *As freely offered themselves*—who voluntarily offered to go to America. *Begun from God*—they held communion with God before he started anything. *Let us seek of God*—let us pray to God to guide us. *Substance*—property or personal possessions. *Anticipating their high destiny*—realizing beforehand how glorious their futures would be. *Sublime lessons of liberty*—lofty and noble lessons of freedom. *Breathing a freedom of opinion*—full of very enlightened and liberal views.

Para. 7. *That you.....the Lord Jesus Christ*—you are to imitate me and do as I tell you only as far as you see me imitating and following the Lord Jesus Christ. If you find me trying to teach you or do myself anything not to be found in the teachings of Christ you are not to pay any attention to me. *More truth.....holy word*—more men and true things are to be discovered in the Bible. *Bewail*—lament, or mourn over. *Period*—stop, i. e., they have come to a point from where they cannot proceed any further. *Luther*—See notes on Lesson IX 'The Translation of the Bible'. *Shining lights*—well-known pensmen; leaders to be imitated and followed. *They penetrated.....God*—They did not discover everything that God wishes us to learn from the Bible. *Shall be made known to you*—shall be revealed to you. *The written word of God*—The Bible.

Para. 8. *Solemnly sought.....us*—Having prayed to God in our company to vouchsafe us His help. *Feasted us that were to go*—Gave a dinner to us pilgrims.

*Pastor*—priest. *Refreshed ourselves*—soothed ourselves. *Making joyful melody in our hearts as well as with the voice*—our hearts were full of joy and so it seemed that we were singing with our hearts as well as with our voices. *Expert in music*—having a good knowledge of music, *i. e.*, were good musicians. *Sweetest melody*—the most pleasing musical sound. *Accompanied us*—went with us. *Delft Haven*—a town in Holland between Rotterdam and Leyden. It was the birthplace of Grotius and famous formerly for its earthenware. *To embark*—to get on board ship. *When a flood of tears was poured out*—when every one wept copiously. *Were not able.....to part*—their grief at parting was so great that they could not speak but said good bye without any words. *A volley*—a number of fire-arms discharged all at the same time. *Ordinance*—cannon.

Para. 9. *Aprosperous.....Southampton*—a favourable breeze bore them along to Southampton. *Wafts*—an instance of the historic present tense. *Freighted.....New England*—loaded with *i. e.* full of the settlers who founded the first colony in New England. *Dartmouth*—a seaport and market-town of Devonshire. It is built in terraces on the face of a steep rock, and has its streets connected by flights of steps. The harbour is safe and commodious. *Lapse*—passing. *Weigh anchor*—lift up the anchor and set sail. Another instance of the historic present tense. *Recedes*—gets further and further away till it is lost to sight. *Unfurling their sails*—spreading out their sails. *Dismayed at the dangers of the enterprise*—getting frightened of the dangers they would meet with in the bold adventure on which they had set out. *Too weak for the service*—unseaworthy, *i. e.*, so weak that it would not last out the voyage. *Put back*—sailed back. *Plymouth*—the great south-western port of England in Devonshire. It is the second naval station of Great Britain and has a break water nearly a mile long. It was formerly

famous for its pilehard fishery and even now it has a very large number of fishermen. It has got a number of beautiful buildings and is full of ship-building yards and factories. It is one of the chief ports in the kingdom for the import of cattle. *To dismiss her*—to dispense with her services. *Those who are willing return to London*—the construction is 'those who are willing to do so return to London'. *Winnowed*—Lit: separated the chaff from the wheat. Here means: separated those who were unwilling to go and were of a vacillating faith from those who had firmly made up their minds to go to America at any cost. *Resolute men*—determined, strong-minded men. *To convey them*—to carry them across. *Colonization*—foundation of the colony, i. e., settling the colony with people. *Virginia*—one of the Middle Atlantic States of the American Union, received its name from Queen Elizabeth in 1585. On May 13, 1607, the first colony was planted and named James Town; characteristic of Virginia are its numerous caves, rock-pillars, and natural bridges. Coal, gypsum, rock-salt, marble &c, are abundant and gold is also found in small quantities. Virginian tobacco is famous all over the world. *Corporate body*—a number of individuals who are empowered to transact business as one person. *Where the past could offer no favourable auguries*—where events that had happened in the past were so dreadful that they could not be taken as omens of good luck in the future, i. e., past events did not foretell future happiness. *Auguries*—signs by which the future could be foretold. Among ancient Romans it used to be the custom to foretell future good or bad luck by cutting open a chicken and looking at its entrails.

Para. 10. *Colonized*—settled with people. *Institutions*—customs and manners. *Roman Catholic hierarchy*—the body of Roman Catholic priests in whom is confided the government or direction of sacred things. *It would*

*have been.....politics*—It would have been before that stage when the mind of the people had begun to take an active part and an intelligent interest in politics which is brought by and is the natural outcome of that stage of a nation's history in which the mind of the people is immersed in religious questions and is very active about religious matters. *Exiles from conscience*—here, 'from' does not mean 'away from' which would then change the meaning of the expression to 'conscienceless exiles'. The word 'from' here means 'on account of' and thus the expression means that their conscience did not permit them to stay at home and follow the old religion and consequently they had to become exiles. *Disciplined by misfortune*—trained in adversity and consequently not spoilt and inclined to grumble. *Cultivated*—cultured, i. e., trained. *Code*—a body of laws.

Para. 11. *Harbours*—sheltered nooks in the land where a vessel can ride at anchor quite safe from the storm which may be raging out at sea. *Majestic*—grand. *The first Virginia Colony*—The first band of settlers who settled in Virginia. *North Carolina*—one of the original thirteen states of the Union. The earliest English settlement was made in 1587, but the colonists were never afterwards heard of. The next settlers came from Virginia about 1650. In 1662 the land was granted by Charles II to Clarendon, Ashley and six other noblemen and hence the name Carolina. Its soil is extremely poor but pitch, tar and turpentine are produced in enormous quantities from its pine forests. Its capital is Raleigh. *Favouring storm* a storm which in the end produced favourable results. *Bay of the Chesapeake*—a deep indentation in the Atlantic coast of the United States, nearly 200 miles in length, with a breadth of from 10 to 30 miles, and an average depth of 9 fathoms. At its mouth are the two capes Henry and Charles facing each other. Its

coast-line is very irregular, and forms numerous lesser bays. *Hudson*—a river of New York, U. S. and one of the most important streams of North America, is formed by two branches which rise in the Adirondades and unite some forty miles from their respective sources. It has a total length of 300 miles and is navigable for 117 miles from its mouth in New York Bay. It abounds in fish and owes its name to Henry Hudson who discovered it in 1609. *Massachusetts*—(Ind: the bluehills) one of the states of New England and of the original confederacy of 1766-88 is for the most part hilly. The coast line is indented with numerous bays of which the chief are Massachusetts Bay and Cape Cod Bay. The chief products of the state are tobacco, cereals, bay and dairy produce. The capital is Boston. *Boisterous voyage*—stormy voyage. *Harbour of Cape Cod*—the harbour in Cape Cod Bay one of the large bays which indent the coast line of Massachusetts. The name of the harbour was Provincetown Harbour and into this the 'Mayflower' entered on the 11th of November 1620 with the band of Puritans 102 in number who subsequently formed Plymouth Colony.

---



# DEATH OF RALEIGH



## INTRODUCTION.

*Gardiner, Samuel Rawson*—Professor of History and a Doctor of Laws was born at Ropley in Hampshire in 1829. He is a well-known historian and has written several books on English history. The most famous and best known of them deal with the Stuart Period. *Were hardly landed.....America*—had barely set foot on the American soil. *The warrior.....New World*—Raleigh. *Passed away*—died; as a matter of fact he was executed. *Raleigh, Sir Walter*—born in 1552 at the manor-house of Hayes on the east coast of Devon entered Oriel College, Oxford, in 1566 and three years later quitted it without a degree to serve his apprenticeship in arms among the Huguenots. After staying six years in France and seeing service in the Netherlands he sailed in 1578 with his half brother in search of the 'Unknown Goal'. A smart brush with the Spaniards drove them back and Raleigh went to Ireland. He distinguished himself in the fighting there and received 12,000 acres of the confiscated Desmond estates. Receiving in 1584 a grant of any lands not actually held by Christian Princes, he sent there several expeditions to explore and colonize the coast to the north of Florida, and on the Region there discovered the Virgin Queen bestowed the name Virginia whilst knighting Raleigh, (1585). He introduced two of its products into Europe, *potatoes* and *tobacco* and abandoned the colony in 1590. He sat in Parliament and gradually rose in favour with the Queen and was given several

high posts. But in 1603 James came to the throne. He hated Raleigh and within half a year after his accession he was sentenced to death for conspiracy with Spain. He was not however, executed straight off but sent to the Tower where he was kept 13 years. Here he composed his unfinished 'History of the World.' He was released in 1616 unpardoned and set off with an expedition in search of a Guiana gold mine. Having failed in his quest he came back and was arrested and lodged in the Tower. On 29th October 1618 Raleigh died bravely and cheerfully on Whitehall Scaffold. With him died the Elizabethan hero age, though he was not the greatest of its heroes. *Elizabeth and James*—See notes on 'The Pilgrim Fathers. *Accused of treason*—blamed for treachery to the king and the country. *Suffered*—allowed, permitted. *The Orinoco*—known now as the Orinoco a river of South America, rises in the Sierra Parime on the North frontier of Brazil and falls into the Atlantic which it enters at the Western extremity of British Guiana. Its total length is 1960 miles and it is said to receive the waters of nearly 2,000 streams.

Para. 1.—*Vain*—useless. *To complete some writings*—to finish some book that he had commenced writing. *He had on hand*—he was doing. *He must prepare for execution*—he must get ready to have his head cut off. *Palace-yard*—the court yard of the palace. *The gate house*—the rooms built over the gate, a very common feature in India. *Westminster*—here refers to the old houses of Parliament which were burnt down in 1834. See notes on Death of Cromwell. *He was to suffer*—he was going to be executed. *With the certainty.....stranger*—when he was perfectly sure that there was no escape from death he became calm in mind again a thing which he had not been for a long time. *Composure*—placidity of mind, calmness. *Lady Raleigh*—her maiden name was Bessy Throgmorton.

She was maid of honor to Queen Elizabeth and was seduced by Raleigh for which he was sent to the Tower by Elizabeth in 1592, and on his release he married her. *To take her farewell*—to say good-bye to him. *The last rites would be paid to his remains*—his body be buried after his execution with all the usual funeral ceremonies, *i. e.*, it would receive a Christian burial and would not be quartered and burnt as felons' bodies generally were. *She had obtained.....body*—she had received permission from the authorities to do what she liked with the body after his execution. *That thou.....alive*—that you are allowed to do whatever you like with that (my body) with which thou could not always do what you liked when I was living, *i. e.*, he means his wife could not control his bodily actions in his lifetime but would be able to do whatever she liked with the body when he was dead. *Conference*—conversation. *Dean*—a dignitary of the Church. *Who was.....death*—he was astonished to find that Raleigh did not show the least particle of fear at the near and certain approach of death. *It did not proceed from*—it was not the outcome of. *Vain glory*—boastfulness. *Unconscious of his real faults*—he did not know that he possessed faults which he really did. *To disabuse him of this idea*—to get this idea out of his head, *i. e.*, to free him from this notion. *Reassured*—freed from doubt. *The communion*—one of the most sacred sacraments of the Christian religion. It is a commemoration of the last supper of Jesus Christ with his disciples. *Merry—gay*. *He spoke.....innocence*—he said he hoped he would be able to make the world (*i. e.*, people in general) believe that he was innocent of treason. *The good Dean.....kind*—the good Dean felt worried when he heard him talking in this way. *Begged him*—implored of him. *Realm*—kingdom. *Acknowledged*—admitted, *Condemned*—sentenced to death. *For all*

*that*—in spite of it all. *He must perish in asserting his innocence*—it was necessary and only fair that he should say that he was innocent at the time of his death.

Para. 2.—*As the hour.....approached*—as the time for his being put to death drew near. *His spirits.....*  
*...him*—he was not feeling at all afraid but was full of excitement at the thought of what was in front of him, *i. e.*, of what was going to befall him. *It was.....by it*—it was very good wine if it could be drunk leisurely getting the full flavour of it, *i. e.*, the thought that his execution was near at hand prevented him enjoying it fully. *To fetch him..... away*—to take him to his execution. *Scaffold*—the platform on which was placed the block where his head was to be cut off. *Was unable to push through the throng*—could not manage to make his way through the crowd and get near him. *I know not.....*  
*...place*—a joke, I do not know what arrangement you will make to get a place but I am sure to find a place which was quite obvious as he was the chief person concerned. *Bald head*—a head without any hair. *Good will*—friendly feeling towards me. *Night cap*—a long conical shaped cap with a tassel which men in cold countries put on before going to bed to keep their heads warm and be saved from catching a chill. *Thou hast.....I*—you require it more than I do because having no hair on your head you are sure to feel colder than a person like myself who has his head covered with hair and is about to die after which he will not require anything material.

Para. 3. *Mounted the scaffold*—got up on the platform where he was going to be executed. *Asked.....people*—asked permission to be allowed to speak to the people defending himself and proclaiming his innocence. *Literally true*—true to the letter, *i. e.*, true according to the primary and natural import of the words. A literal

truth may not always be an absolute truth. It is very often only half a truth. *It was calculated.....hearers*—the speech was meant to leave his hearers with a wrong idea about the guilt for which he was being executed. *He spoke.....England*—He told them how hard he had to try before he could persuade his men to come back to England when their expedition was unsuccessful. *Denied.....comrades*—emphatically asserted that he had never for a moment even thought of or desired to leave his comrades and run away. *Adverted to*—turned to or drew their attention to. *Had been current against him*—had been commonly known to his disfavour; had been circulated among the people on account of which he lost favour with them. Robert Devereux, second Earl of Essex, son of Walter Devereux, first Earl, was born at Netherwood in Herefordshire, November 10, 1567, studied at Cambridge, was introduced at court by Burleigh in 1584, and gained the favour of Elizabeth. On the death of Leicester, Essex succeeded to his place in the Queen's affections and honours were showered upon him. He commanded two expeditions against Spain and was made Earl Marshall of England and Chancellor of Cambridge University. At the same time he acquired a high reputation beyond the limits of the court by his generous patronage of men of letters and science such as Shakespeare and Bacon. But popularity turned his head he offended the Queen by rudeness. In spite of this he was appointed (1559) Lord Lieutenant of Ireland when the larger portion of the island was in rebellion. He failed however to allay the disorders and was recalled. Returning to London Essex madly put himself at the head of an insurrection, was imprisoned, and after a trial, for his share in which Bacon has incurred deserved obloquy, was condemned to death. His execution took place in February 1601. *Had puffed.....division*—had blown wreaths of tobacco smoke into his face in order to make fun of him and mock him in his distress.

ing situation. To smoke into any one's face is very rude and a sign of very bad manners. *A pure fiction*—an undiluted lie, a lie outright without any admixture of truth. *He concluded*—he ended his speech. *Grievously offended*—terribly hurt. God being a pure and holy being feels hurt and angry when we make ourselves impure and unholy. *Vanity* pride; conceit. *Such callings.....it*—such professions as are congenial to sin, i. e., professions in which men are thrown into so many temptations that they cannot help committing sins which they might otherwise not have done. *Courses of wickedness and vice*—lives in which men are bound to be sinful and vicious. *Cast away my sins from me*—purge me of my sins or remove them from me. *He will receive me into everlasting life*—He will take me to live with Him and I will enjoy everlasting life. *Making my peace with God*—asking God's forgiveness and begging Him to take me back into His favour again.

Para. 4. *Preparations were completed*—arrangements for his execution were finished. *The executioner*—the man who was going to cut his head off. He generally wears a mask. *Prithee*—the shortened form of "pray thee" means, I beg of thee. - *Held back* - hesitated to let him see it. *He ran.....edge*—He felt the edge of the axe with his finger to see how sharp it was. *This is sharp.....diseases*—This remedy (the axe) is a very severe one but it is one that removes the disease effectively, once for all. It means that after death a man cannot sin again and is also freed from all his misfortunes. *Some one.....cast*—Some one did not like his kneeling in the direction in which he did and said he ought to kneel with his face towards the East. It is a superstition with Christians to face the east when repeating the creed, because the star announcing the birth of Christ was seen in the East. All churches are built in the form of a cross with the head of the cross towards the East. Also Palestine lies to the east of

Europe. *What matter.....right?*—it does not matter in the least which way the head lies as long as a man's thoughts and feelings are clean and pure. *The appointed signal*—the signal which shows that the condemned man is ready to have his head cut off. *Headsmen*—executioner. *Was reluctant.....duty*—hesitated to give the stroke which would sever the head from the body. *Severed*—separated; cut off. *Remains*—the dead body. *Westminster*—See notes on 'Death of Cromwell' *St. Margaret's*—a church in the district of Westminster.

Para 5. *Was.....hand*—was circulated among the friends of Raleigh. *Medley*—mixture, a combination of different sentiments and ideas. *Sarcasms*—ironical remarks. *It.....later hour*—It was most probably when the force of his indignation had spent itself and he had become calm and collected and realised that he would soon be dead and free from all these petty jealousies. *Fly-leaf*—a blank leaf at the beginning or end of a book. *Touching lines*—pathetic verses. Poetry which affects one's feelings with sadness. *Is visible*—can be seen. *Even such.....I trust*:—Time is such that it doesn't leave the least consideration for any one's feelings. It takes everything from us and gives us nothing in return. As Time passes we gradually lose our youth, our joys and everything we have and pass on by degrees to old age and eventually to Death after which our dead body is buried and with it the history of our lives comes to an end and seems to repose in the grave. But as a Christian Raleigh believes in the Resurrection of the Dead and hopes to rise up again on the last day free from the bonds of the earth, the grave and the dust.

Para 6. *Epitaph*—an inscription on a grave. *The child.....century*—One born and bred in that period. *It.....meanness*—It was possible to be honorable and

free from meanness and still not be strictly truthful and altogether refrain from telling lies. *In his chase after wealth*—In his efforts to amass wealth. *Sordid*—mean. *Covetous*—greedy. *His.....punishment*—He had to pay the penalty for the sins he had committed. *Which did not tarry*—which did not delay in descending on him. *Because .....them*—though he was quite unconscious he had committed those sins, *i. e.*, the sins for which he had been punished were not deeply thought out or premeditated ones but simply acts done thoughtlessly on the impulse of the moment. *It was not blindness to his errors which made.....dishonour*—It was not simply because they were blind to his faults that all Englishmen took Raleigh's part but because they knew that the execution of a brave honorable and patriotic man like him was a disgrace to the nation being, as it was, simply a base king's sacrifice to Spanish pride. *His countrymen.....greatness*—Englishmen knew that even when he set out on the wildest of adventures he always had as his aim and object the greatness of his country. *In his eyes*—according to his opinion. *England's.....nations*—There was a connection which could not be severed between the greatness of England and the real welfare of other nations, *i. e.*, he thought that if England progressed and became great the other nations were bound to be benefited by her greatness. *They knew that his heart was right*—all Englishmen knew that Raleigh in spite of all his faults was a true and loyal subject of the Crown, an honorable English gentleman.



# THE PURITANS.

## INTRODUCTION.

*Kingsley, Charles* was born at Holne Vicarage Devonshire, 12th June 1819, entered Magdalen College, Cambridge, 1840, was appointed curate of Eversley, Hampshire 1842, and rector 1844 and married at the same time a daughter of Mr. Grenfell, M. P. His first publication was *Village Sermons*. In 1848, appeared the *Saint's Tragedy*, of which Bunsen remarked that it proved the author capable of continuing Shakespeare's great series of historic dramas. *Alton Locke* was published in 1849, and is perhaps his most powerful work and contains vigorous descriptions of London life among the working classes. *Yeast*, *Hypatia*, and *Westward Ho*, are other novels of his, the last two being historical. In 1859 Kingsley was appointed Professor of Modern History at Cambridge, Canon of Chester (1869) and Canon of Westminster (1873). He died at Eversley, January 23, 1875. *Elizabeth*—See notes on '*The Pilgrim Fathers*.' *The bulk of Englishmen*—the greater number of Englishmen. *Zealously Protestant*—(lit. protested against the old religion with great zeal.) They had become strict followers of the Reformed Religion known as Protestantism. *Precisians*—from precise, meaning strict and exact followers of the faith. *Puritans*—were the popular party in England in the 16th and 17th centuries corresponding to those who in other countries brought about the Reformation. In England however the authors of the Reformation were Henry VIII, Elizabeth, the Protector Somerset, and Archbishop Cranmer and not the people. At first carried out by Henry, the Reformation was to consist simply of a transfer of the

Papal supremacy to himself, all the Catholic rites and doctrines were to be retained. It was only by force of circumstances that the Government was driven at last to join the Protestants and consequently the smallest possible concessions were made to their demands. The Reformation as completed under Elizabeth was essentially a compromise; and the Church of England 'continued to be for more than a hundred and fifty years, the servile handmaid of monarchy, the steady enemy of public liberty. The Puritans were the champions of Religious Liberty and to them alone it was due that religion and liberty were not totally dissevered. James—See notes on '*The Pilgrim Fathers.*' Puritanism—the doctrine of the Puritans. Charles the First—King of Great Britain and Ireland from 1625 to 1649, was born at Dunfermline, 19th November, 1600. He was the second son of James I, of England, and became in 1612, through the death of his elder brother Henry, heir-apparent to the throne, to which he succeeded in 1625. The nation greeted his accession with a burst of loyalty. His personal dignity contrasted with the garrulous vulgarity of his father, and the failure of the scheme for a marriage with the Spanish Infanta (even though he subsequently married Henrietta Maria of France, also a Roman Catholic princess) gratified the English people who hated Spain above all countries. His early popularity however waned when it was seen that he retained in all positions of trust his father's unpopular and imperious favourite Buckingham. Charles soon showed that the chief anxiety of his obstinate mind was to become an absolute monarch. He dissolved Parliament and resorted to forced loans and a tax known as ship-money. In 1628 Charles found himself compelled to call a Parliament which presented to him the celebrated Petition of Right. He dissolved this Parliament also and with the help of Laud and Strafford endeavoured to govern

without a Parliament. Scotland rebelled and proving victorious, Charles summoned another Parliament which began to sit on 3rd November 1640 and was subsequently known as the Long Parliament. Headed by Pym and Hampden it declared the decrees of the Star Chamber and Court of High Commission null and void, passed a Bill for triennial Parliaments, impeached Strafford and caused him to be executed. For a time Charles submitted but a rebellion breaking out in Ireland and Parliament increasing its demands Charles raised the standard of Civil War. At first he had the advantage in the War but was eventually defeated at the Battle of Naseby 1645, and was handed over to the Parliament by the Scots with whom he had taken refuge. The 'Rump' Parliament tried him and had him executed in 1649. *Obstacle*—impediment; something that stands in the way. *In defiance of the Parliament*—in direct contradiction to the Parliament. *Stern and sober minded*—strict and serious. *Noble-temper*—high-minded and generous. *To raise the standard of English life*—to improve the morals and better the behaviour and conduct of English people in general. *A fine picture*—a very good sketch, i.e., a good description. *Zeal for Truth*—Christian names like this were common among the Puritans. Cf. Praise-God Barebones.

Para. 1. — *Poetry*—here does not mean a poem or rhymed lines, it refers to the emotions, ideas and feelings which true poetry always generates in one's breast and which also forms generally the subject-matter of true poetry. *The unwritten tragedy of the battle-psalm and the charge*—the tragic poetry which was never written but which existed in the shape of thoughts which came into our mind at the remembrance of the psalm which the Puritan troopers used to sing before they charged into battle with the Bible in one hand and the broadsword in the other.

*Idyllic poetry*—a, short, highly wrought descriptive poem consisting generally of scenes or events of pastoral life. *Quiet home-drama*—simple description of happy domestic, home-life. *The hearth*—home life. *The beauties of every-day human life*—the beautiful things to be seen in the common-places of life which can be made the subject-matter of poetry. Cf. Wordsworth's small poems like 'The Reverie of Poor Susan' &c. *Take the most commonplace of them*—here he gives an example of the poetry that could be found in the life of a Puritan and he takes the case of a man who has got an unromantic and unpoetic name like Zeal-for-Truth. *Silly*—foolish. *Six feet high*—shows that he was above the average height and was a tall strapping young fellow. *Ruddy*—showing health and strength. *Flaxen hair*—light colored hair. The color of the fibres of Indian corn or *bhutta*. *He wore.....theirs*—the Puritans were called Roundheads by the cavaliers because they did not allow their hair to grow long and curl them as the cavaliers used to do but used to cut them close to the head as is done now-a-days. *In essenced curls*—they used to put scented oil on their hair. *A true Viking's son*—a true descendent of the ancient Danish sea-robbers who were very daring and bold. *Bold-hearted*—courageous. *Danclagh*—properly *Denelagu* (Danish Law) the name given to the district in England which Alfred ceded to the Danes under Guthrum by the treaty of Wedmore, 878, A.D. It was called Danelagh because it was governed by Danish law. It included the greater part of England, comprising Northumbria, East Anglia, most of Essex, and most of Central and all of Eastern England from the Thames to the Firth of Forth. Edward the Elder won back Mercia, Essex and East Anglia but in the reign of Edmund (940-946) Watling Street was again made the boundary between the Danelagh and Wessex. The name Danelagh was disused after the Norman

conquest. *By Canuts' side*—fighting by the side of Canute. *Canute's*—(originally Onut, Latinised Canutus, Fr. Canute, then by change of accent English Canute), King of Denmark and England succeeded his father Sweegen on the Danish throne in 1014. He began his reign by ravaging the east and south of England in revenge for the massacre of Danes perpetrated by Ethelred the Unready. The victory of Assaundun and the death of Eadmund Ironside in 1016 who had bravely opposed him for a time left him sole ruler of England. Although his rule opened with massacre and assassination, his conduct suddenly changed, and he governed for nearly twenty years with mercy, wisdom and justice, making no distinction between Dane and Englishman. He conciliated the esteem of his subjects and his reign was tranquil and prosperous. Canute revived Dunstan's policy, built many churches and monasteries and even made a pilgrimage to Rome. His favourite scheme was to weld Norway, Denmark and England into a great northern kingdom. He died at Shaftesbury, 12th November, 1035. *Old moored grange*—old country house with big wide deep ditch round it dug in ancient times when there was always fighting going on, as a means of defence against the enemy. *Jackboot*—long riding boots reaching up to the thighs. *Oliver-Cromwell*—was born of good family at Huntingdon, April 25th 1599. He was educated at school at Huntingdon and afterwards at Sidney Sussex College, Cambridge. From the latter, however, he was recalled by the death of his father and settled first on the family estate at Huntingdon and then on a farm at St. Ives, marrying in 1620 Elizabeth, daughter of Sir James Bourchin, a gentleman of landed property in Essex. Cromwell soon associated himself with the Puritan party and threw himself heart and soul into the Civil War. He rapidly advanced to the position of Colonel; distinguished himself

greatly at the battles of Marston Moor and Newbury and when the celebrated 'Self-denying Ordinance' was passed he became Lieutenant-General of the Parliamentary forces under Fairfax. After this he gained many victories, the most famous being those of Naseby, Preston Moor and Dunbar. He gained the final victory over the Royalists at Worcester, 3rd September 1651, which he called 'a crowning mercy'. Cromwell soon superseded Fairfax and was invested by the title of 'Lord Protector' in 1653. From thence to his death he was absolute ruler of England and the country was never more respected and feared abroad than during the protectorship of Cromwell. After a brilliant but yet melancholy term of solitary power he died 3rd September, 1658 on the anniversary of his greatest victory. For sometime after his death Cromwell was looked upon as a fanatic, tyrant and hypocrite ; but that shallow and ignoble hypothesis has been banished from historical literature by the industry and genius of Carlyle. He now ranks as perhaps the greatest and (circumstances considered) wisest ruler England has ever had.

*Approving smile*—smile showing that he was pleased at his appearance. *Naseby-field*—the battle-field of Naseby, a village of Northamptonshire and the scene of the third great defeat of the Royalists under Charles I, and Prince Rupert by the Parliamentarians under Cromwell, Fairfax and Ireton, June 14th 1645.

*Imperial*—a tuft of hair on the lower lip (the style of beard made fashionable by Napoleon III.) *Cuirass*—breastplate. *Well-polished*—bright and shining. *Dint*—same as dent ; a cavity or impression made by a blow or by pressure ; here the dints were made by the blows of the enemies' swords. *Sate*—another form of sat. *Gracefully*—looking well in the saddle. *As any long-locked and essenced cavalier in front of him*—as any cavalier opposite to him with long curls oiled with scented oil. *For a moment*—for a very short space of

time: *With a throb of the heart*—here it refers to the peculiar thrill which vibrates through a man's body when he thinks of his beloved. *Sweet*—sweet-looking pretty and lovable. *Might.....himself*—might think him handsome too as he himself did. *Was he the worse for the thought*—Did it do him harm for thinking like that. *He was certainly.....hell*—It certainly did him no harm, on the contrary it did him good to stop the current of his thoughts at once with a feeling of shame that he had allowed such worldly thoughts to enter his mind while he was engaged in the most serious kind of work which he considered to be the Lord's work at the risk of his life and soul. *Carnal vanities*—useless things connected with the flesh. *As.....sweep*—as the actual fight began and his sword began to be tinged with blood at every stroke that he made. *We are befoo'ed by names*—we are led to believe erroneously that if a man's name is ugly and prosaic he also is unromantic and prosaic and has no poetry in him. *Crusader*—a knight who had taken the vow to vindicate the right of Christian pilgrimage to Jerusalem and latterly to seize and hold Jerusalem against the Turks. They used to wear the emblem of the cross on their shields and on their garments; and the expeditions to Jerusalem which were many in number and extended over a period of two hundred years were known as the crusades. *Roundhead*—the name given to the Parliamentarians in contempt by the Royalists because they cropped their hair close to the head instead of wearing it long as they themselves used to do. *Granting him only sincerity*—acknowledging that he was sincere in his beliefs. *Which he had*—which he really was. *And that of a right awful kind*—and his sincerity was so intense as to border almost on fanaticism. *A knight errant*—a knight who went about wandering from place to place redressing wrongs and protecting women, children, the weak and helpless from injury and insult. They existed mostly in Mediaeval times. *As ever*

*watched.....chapel*—This refers to the custom prevalent in olden days of chivalry when a knight before he really became one and put on the symbol of knighthood, his spurs, had to keep up the whole night before the day he was knighted praying in a chapel to keep the vows of his knighthood and not break them; and that he might be made worthy by God to become a knight. The putting on of the spurs, was the sign of knighthood. The fantastic Gothic chapel refers to the architecture of the chapel in which he prayed. '*Storied windows richly dight*'—a quotation from Milton's '*Il Penseroso*' it means windows richly ornamented with carvings and stained glass which portray the stories of saints and martyrs. *He lay bleeding.....horse*—had fallen wounded over the dead body of his brave horse. Notice the word *corpse* is generally used for the dead body of a human being and the word *carcass* for the dead body of an animal. Here the former word is used as a brave horse is such a faithful and noble animal that it is considered equal to a man. *Waiting.....surgeon*—waiting till the surgeon could come to him. There being many wounded and only a few surgeons, everyone couldn't be attended to at the same time. *Fumbled for*—groped for; tried to take out of his boot which he did awkwardly and with difficulty being wounded. *To hum*—to sing the tune without pronouncing the words in a low tone. *He had played the man in Isreal*—he had behaved and carried himself like a brave man among the Puritans. The Puritans likened themselves to the Israelites and the cavaliers to the Gentiles against whom they used to fight. *Resisted unto blood*—opposed them and fought with them till he was wounded. *Striving against sin*—fighting against injustice and wickedness. The Puritans thought the cavaliers were so wicked that they could best be described as followers of the devil.

Para. 2. *He came wearied*—when he came back invalided, home worn out by his wounds and the



fatigues of the journey. *Thoresby dyke*—the canal that flowed along Thoresby rise. The drains and streams in the fen-country (Lincoln) and in Devonshire are called dykes. *Autumn eve*—an evening in October. *Knot of tall poplars*—the group of poplar trees growing close together in a bunch. *Brood misty flat*—The level plane over which there was a kind of mist on account of the dampness and swampy nature of the surrounding country and on account of which objects were dimly seen. *The one great abele.....gusts*—the big 'white poplar tree had its silvery leaves tossed from one side to another by the wind which was getting more and more gentle in force thus giving it the appearance of a silver sheet waving from side to side in the breeze. *And knew.....door*—seeing these trees he knew that he was quite close to the house of his forefathers. *Who can.....wounded*—nobody but he himself can say how many happy and beautiful incidents of his childhood passed through his mind when he saw these things taking him back to those happy old days and making him forget that he was wounded and could not move about easily. *The great pike*—a species of fish. *Shrieked.....jaws*—as girls do at the sight of anything that frightens them. *Dark long lode*—a straight water channel which looked very deep and extended to a great distance. *Ruffling with crimson.....breeze*—The waters of the lode were ruffling in the evening breeze and the bright red light of the setting sun were making the water look crimson. *Skate home in triumph*—came home skating on the ice with Patience in their midst sitting on a gate and looking very triumphant. *What a day that was*—What an exciting day that was. *Tied the beef-bones under the four corners*—the ends of the bones being rounded they would cause the gate to slide quite easily on the ice without much friction. *Their long fen-runners whistled along the ice-lane*—The skates which they wore to skate along the fens produced a whistling on account of the speed with which they

skated along the frozen channel which seemed a veritable lane of ice. *Sighing reeds*—reeds growing along the bank and producing a sighing sound as the wind blew through it. *Towed home*—dragged her home on the gate. *Home* is an adverbial object of place. *At a pace like the race-horse's*—as fast as a race horse would go. Skaters skate very fast and can cover distance much quicker than an ordinary carriage and horse. *A deliverance from heaven*—the usual phrase that the Puritans used when they won a victory or were saved from some danger, meaning God himself had saved them by his help. *Second.....Red-sea one*—it was so important in his eye that it seemed only next in importance to the Red sea one. The Red Sea deliverance refers to the crossing over of the Israelites and being saved from the Egyptians who were drowned in the Red Sea. *Was there no poetry.....thought*—Did he not have a feeling of exaltation in his heart at their thought of this deliverance. *The reed-beds which it.....flame*—the sheets of water in which the reeds were growing, were bathed in the golden light of the setting sun and appeared as if they were on fire. *Seem tokens that.....path*—the bright light looked as though was throwing the glory of his presence before his path to guide him on his way as he did in olden times for the Israelites. The reference is to the journeying of the children of Israel in the wilderness for forty years before they reached the Promised land. God used to guide them in the day by means of a golden cloud and at night by a pillar of fire. *Sweet clamour of the wild fowl*—the noise made by the wild fowl which sounded sweet in his ears after such a long absence from his home. *Gathering for on rich psalm ere they sank to rest*—collected together for one last loud and joyful song before they settled down for the night in the fens. *Psalm*—was an ancient Greek hymn in honor of Apollo who was also called Pæan. *Seem to him.....triumph*—he feels that the sing-

ing of the birds is like the pealing of natural bells ringing triumphantly to welcome him home just as the bells of country churches are set ringing to welcome home the lord of the manor or great persons when they come home after a long absence. *Sweeter and bolder.....steeple-house*—the sound seemed much pleasanter and louder to him than even the chimes of such grand cathedrals as Lincoln and Peterborough. *Lapwing as she tumbled.....path*—the lapwing limped along in front of him making a wailing sound to make people think it was hurt. It is the habit of the lapwing when any one comes near its nest to go in an opposite direction limping along on the ground as though its wing was broken tempting the intruder to catch it and thus draws him away from its nest which is built on the ground.

"Para 3.—*Though she was a Puritan*—the Puritans were supposed to be so pious that they thought it wrong to indulge in the ordinary emotions of human beings. *Her cheek flush, her eye grow dim*—her face turn red and her eyes fill with tears, signs of shyness, love and joy all caused by the return of her lover. *Like a sliding spark of fire*—the red coat coming up to the house looked from a distance on account of its color like a lit of fire coming gliding along the fen bank. *Fled.....pray*—an action characteristic of a religious Puritan maiden. *Was there.....gate*—was he not greeted as any cavalier would have been on his return home by a regular acclamation of joyful welcome from the home-folk as he entered the courtyard of the house? The interrogative form is put for the sake of emphasis to show that he was really greeted in that way. *Did not cavalier*—the old house dog welcomed him in the same manner as a cavalier's dog would have done his master showing that the Puritans were just as human as the cavaliers. *Hug him*—embrace him. *Hold him at arm's length*—

to have a better look at him. *To bind kings in chains and nobles with links of iron*—quoted from the 149th Psalm 8th verse. This was the motto of the Parliamentarians specially those who were Puritans. *Contend.....saints*—fight till they died for their religion which they considered the true one. *Wistfully—longingly. Flaunting with bare bosom*—with a low-necked blouse on like the court ladies of those days. *Tawdry, finery and paint*—showy ornaments and paint on the face. *Shrouded.....pinner*—closely covered with coif and pinner. The former is a kind of covering for the head which Puritan maidens used to put on and the latter a kind of kerchief which used to be pinned round the shoulders. *Which was there still*—which she possessed though she hid it. *Was meant for one alone*—for her husband only. *And that only..... time*—the husband whom she would get if it was God's will that she should do so and that also when God thought that the proper time had come. *Faltering of their voices*—trembling of the voices through shyness and emotion. *Which said more*—which was more expressive. *Herrick's Dianemes*—Herrick's love-poems. Robert Herrick, an English poet of good family, was born in Cheapside, London, in August 1591, and educated at St. John's College, Cambridge, after spending a wild youth in his native city, he took orders in 1629, at the mature age of thirty-eight and was presented to the living of Dean Prior in Devonshire, from which he was ousted by the Puritans in 1648, but replaced at the Restoration. He died 15th October 1674. *Waller's Saccharissa's*—Waller's love poems addressed to Lady Dorothy Sidney whom he styled Saccharissa and wooed with his verses but failed to win. Edmund Waller, an English poet was born at Cobshill, Hertfordshire, March 2nd 1605. He was a distant relative of Cromwell and was educated at Eton and King's College, Cambridge. He was banished from the

country for plotting, but was allowed to return afterwards and died at Beaconsfield near which he had a house at Hall Barn, October, 1687. *Flames, darts, posies, love-knots. Anagrams*—different names given to the love-poems written by Waller. The first two poems are those that express ardent and fiery love. *Posies*—banquet of flowers. *Anagrams*—poems in which the lines when transposed formed new lines. *Strung together two rhymes*—joined together sentences which rhymed with one another. *Did.....Helicon*—did not he draw his ideas (which though not expressed in poetry were quite poetic) from a source which was nobler than the one the Greek poets used to draw their inspiration from. Helicon was the mountain pertaining to the muses. '*My love.....but one*'—quoted from the songs of Solomon. *If he had filled.....nymphs*—in the style of the love-poetry of those days.

Para. 4.—*Idyllic poetry*—poetry dealing with Arcadian subjects. *Longfellow's Evangeline*—one of the most famous poems of Longfellow the American poet. The subject of the poem is a very pathetic love story. Gabriel and Evangeline, the two lovers were parted from each other in the very beginning as the whole colony was exiled by the order of George II. and all their possessions confiscated. She wandered from place to place in search of him till at length grown old in this hopeless search she became a sister of mercy in Pennsylvania. The plague broke out there and she discovered Gabriel smitten with it in one of the alms-houses. He died trying to whisper her name. He was buried and Evangeline lies beside him in the grave. *Heifer*—a young cow. *Sty*—the place where the pigs are kept. *Canter*—one of the many different ways in which a horse runs. *Bircher*—a species of dog that lies in wait for game. *Flashed*—moved so quickly that they passed in front of one like a flash. *Whinnying*—making the pecu-

liar sound that horses make when they are pleased. *Streaming manes*—long manes. *The Lord's great dealings*.—the merciful and grand way in which the Lord had helped Cromwell.

Para. 5.—*They.....ourselves*—they were men exactly like ourselves possessing the same desires and passions that we do. *There.....birds*—they had quite enough sentiment and poetic thoughts and feelings though they did not express them in rhyme like the singing of birds but they lived their lives in such a way as to deserve the epithet of being poetic. The gist of the lessons is that though the Puritans behaved in a peculiar manner and were not like cavaliers still they possessed poetry in their nature and it could be seen in the course of their ordinary lines.

---

# DRIVING OUT OF LONG PARLIAMENT.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

*Guizot*—See Notes on ‘Death of Cromwell.’ No sooner.....*themselves*—the Parliamentarians after they had captured and executed the king and were quite secure in their power began to quarrel among themselves. *To dissolve itself*—a technical term meaning to break up of its own accord. *Carried out the army’s threat*—drove the Parliament out.

Para. 1.—*The House*—the House of Commons, i. e., the Parliament ; there was no House of Lords during the period of the Commonwealth. *Coming to a vote*—about to vote. *Vane*—Sir Henry Vane, one of the most prominent figures in the history of the Civil War and the Commonwealth, was born in the year 1612. He received a thorough education at Westminster and Magdalen College, Oxford. He then went abroad and remained for some time in France and at Geneva where he contracted views strongly opposed to the Anglican form of church government and the monarchical form of temporal power. Returning to England he found himself exposed to much unpleasantness on account of his views. On account of this he sailed for America and was there elected Governor of Massachusetts. He remained there for a year and then came back to England, got married and was reconciled to his father. He became member of Parliament and took a leading part against the king during the Civil War and though he was not one of those who had been actively concerned in the execution of

Charles I., he was thrown into prison at the Restoration and afterwards beheaded on Tower Hill on the 14th of July 1662. *Had insisted.....Bill*—had urged and spoken strongly and earnestly in favour of the Bill being passed. *To conjure.....step*—to beg of his colleagues not to take such an important step without due consideration. *Whitchhall*—the royal palace outside which Charles I., was executed and where Cromwell was now living. *Lambert John*—an English general, was born at Kirkby-Malhamdale in Yorkshire, 7th September 1619. He was a Colonel in the Parliamentary army at Marston Moor, became Major-General in 1648, reduced Pomfret in 1649, and fought at Worcester in 1651. He took a leading part in the deposition of Richard Cromwell, when he virtually became Dictator. He quelled the Royalist insurrection of Sir G. Booth but on the opposition of Monk his army deserted, and he was committed to the Tower in January, 1660. He was banished to Guernsey in 1662 where he died in March 1694. *A detachment of soldiers*—a small body of soldiers taken from the main army and appointed to some special duty. *The lobby of the House*—the entrance-hall of the House of Commons. *Worsted stockings*—stockings made out of a kind of coarse wool. *Passionately decanting on the urgency of the Bill*—speaking with great force and emotion on the necessity of passing the Bill. *Which grieved.....soul*—for which he felt extremely sorry. *Rather he.....do it*—he would prefer to suffer extreme bodily pain than do what he had come to do. *There.....nation*—he was compelled to do it because it was to the glory of God and to the benefit of the nation. *Might.....good*—might result in benefit to the nation.

Para. 2.—*He was arguing.....Bill*—he was giving them reasons why it was necessary to bring the Bill to the vote at once. *Adjured.....adoption*—begged



of the House to omit the usual proceedings that take place before a Bill is adopted. *Beckoned*—made signs to Harrison asking him to come to him. *Sat still*—sat quiet without moving. *The Speaker.....question*—the speaker got up to put the Bill to the vote. *At first.....the Parliament*—in the beginning of his speech he approved of the work of the Parliament and praised it for all it had done. *His accents.....violent*—his words and the motion of his hands and body showed that he was getting excited and angry. *Delays*—in doing things. *Covetousness*—greediness. *To perpetuate yourselves in power*—to keep yourselves in power for ever. *Other instruments*—other means, i. e., other men who will do the work better. *Would not suffer them to speak*—would not allow them to say anything. *Parliamentary language*—polite and courteous language as should be used in Parliament. *Unbecoming language*—language that was not fit to be heard. *Horrid*—dreadful. *Their servant*—Cromwell had been subordinate to the Parliament and all this time had done what he had been told to do by them. *Unprecedented bounty*—such generosity as had never before been heard of or seen. *Come, come*—stop. *We have.....this*—we do not want to hear any more of this kind of talk. *I will put an end to your prating*—I will stop your talking in such a foolish way. *Musketeers*—soldiers bearing muskets.

Para. 3.—*You are no Parliament*—you all are so corrupt that you are not fit to form a Parliament. *I say*—I repeat. *Begone*—go away from here. *Give way to honest men*—make room for people who are more honest than you are. *Honest*—is used here in his excitement for more honest. *Stamping his foot*—through anger. *Fetch him down*—bring him down from his place in the Speaker's chair. *Lenthall William*—Speaker of the Long Parliament, was born at Henby-on-Thames, Oxfordshire, in June 1591.

He was educated at Thome School and St. Alban Hall, Oxford, and called to the bar at Lincoln's Inn in 1616. Elected M. P. for Woodstock, he was chosen Speaker of the House of Commons in 1640. He shared in the expulsion of the Rump and retired from public life until 1654 when he sat for Oxfordshire, as again in 1656. At the Restoration his name was exempted from the Act of Indemnity but he obtained a pardon, and retired to Beerford Priory, Oxfordshire, where he died September 3, 1662, having on his death-bed recanted his 'Puritanical errors' to the Bishop of Chichester. *Take him down*—bring him down from the Speaker's chair by force. *Algernon Sidney*—grand nephew to Sir Philip Sidney, was born in 1662. In 1641 he commanded a Royalist troop of horsemen but two years later he threw in his lot with the Parliamentarians and fought as Lieutenant-Colonel in the battle of Marston Moor and was wounded. He next served as Lieutenant-General of horse in Ireland, and returned, to Parliament by Cardiff acted as one of Charles judges. He withheld his hand from the death-warrant due to family motives. Cromwell's protectorate offended this hot republican, he withdrew to Penshurst, the Leicester's Kentish seat. At the Restoration he had to leave the country and stayed in the continent for seventeen years. In 1677 a Royal Pardon let him return to England. He then got himself mixed up with the Rye-House Plot, was arrested and brought to trial for high treason. He was found guilty though the proofs against him were not at all satisfactory and on the 7th December 1683 he died on Tower Hill by his unjust death earning the little-merited title of 'Martyr in freedom's cause.' *Put him out*—send him out of the House. *Reiterated*—repeated; said a second time. *It is against.....honesty*—it is opposed to morality and common honesty, i. e., it is immoral and dishonest. *You.....course*—you could have if you liked prevented this thing being

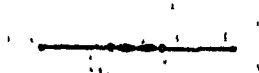
done which is quite out of the common. *You are a juggler*—you are always trying to play tricks by making speeches which mean something quite different to what they outwardly appear to be. *Deliver me save me.* *He flung nicknames in the face of each*—he called each member as he passed out by some name which he thought suited him and depicted some special peculiarity of his character. *Nicknames*—are names other than one's real names by which people begin calling the person bearing the nickname; it really means a familiar or contemptuous name or appellation. *Drunkards*—people given to an excessive use of alcoholic liquors. *And* is an augmentative suffix *Corrupt*—given to taking bribes. It literally means rotten.

Para. 4.—*Mace*—a heavy metal staff, symbol of authority. *Bankle*—a toy or trifling thing, a short stick with a fool's head anciently carried by the fools attached to great houses. *He frequently repeated*—he said the following sentence over and over again. *I have sought.....this work*—I have prayed and begged of the Lord night and day that I would prefer that he should kill me than to be compelled to do what I have just had to do. *It was not.....again*—things had not yet come to such a pass that they could not be set right again, i. e., it was not too late to put things on their old footing again. *Rejected this advice*—would not listen to the counsel given him. *He had embezzled*—he had appropriated fraudulently for his own use money which had been put into his trust for other purposes. *Long since*—long ago. *He had often tendered it to the House*—he had put the accounts before the House more than once for examination. *Dissolution Bill*—the Bill which would dissolve Parliament.

Para. 5.—*To wait the event*—to see what would be the upshot of the step Cromwell was taking. *I did*

*not think to have done this*—I did not think I would do this. *Perceiving the spirit of God so strong upon me*—finding that I was inspired by the Holy Ghost. *I would.....blood*—I would not take advice from any human being. *Had assembled*—had met together. *Private persons*—people not having any official standing. *You shall not be disturbed*—nobody will bother you or interfere with your doings. *You can't but know*—you can't help knowing, i. e., you must know. *Parliament is dissolved*—the sitting of Parliament has come to an end. *Bradshaw, John*—a keen and conscientious, but somewhat narrow Puritan, was born in Cheshire in 1586, studied law at Gray's Inn and soon became known as an able Chamber counsel. In the struggle between King and Parliament he took the side of the latter, like his cousin Milton, became in 1647 Chief-Justice of Chester; and in 1649 earned for himself a lasting name in history by presiding at the High Court which tried and condemned Charles I. Bradshaw was handsomely rewarded for his services on this occasion, but he resisted Cromwell and the army and was opposed to the Protectorate. Under Richard Cromwell he became Lord President of the Council of State. He died November 22nd, 1659. During the retaliatory persecution of the Puritans in the reign of Charles II, his body was exhumed, and hung on a gibbet with those of Cromwell and Ireton. *Divers*—several. *A present Parliament*—a stop should be put to the sitting of Parliament for the present. *Wherefore*—on account of which. *Departing*—going away. *The grounds*—reasons. *Be shortly made public*—will soon be made known to every one. *Proceedings*—course of action. *Placard*—a square bit of cardboard on which something was written which drew the notice of the public. *Cavalier*—Royalist; one belonging to the king's party. *Overjoyed*—delighted. *A regicide*—the murderer of a king is called a regicide. Cromwell was considered such a one by all

the Royalists. *Inscription*—legend, piece of writing. *This house to be let unfurnished*—anybody who wishes to hire this house can do so but will get it without any furniture. A joke meaning that the house is tenantless.



# MILTON.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

*More real*.—More lifelike than that described by Kingsley in Thorsby's life. Thorsby's life is purely imaginary but that of Milton based upon historic facts.

*Hardly less &c*.—Milton's life although real is full of details which are as interesting as those in the imaginary life of Thorsby.

PARA. I,—*The highest*.—The noblest qualities of Puritanism are found in Milton's life.

*Complettest*.—The different phases of Puritanism are found in Milton's life. In Milton's life we find a counterpart of every detail of the history of Puritanism.

*Absolutely contemporany*.—Covers exactly the same period.

*His cause*.—The party whose cause he interested himself in.

*His life &c*.—He was born at a time when Puritanism began to assert itself and died when it had lost its influence. His life therefore exactly covered the period during which the cause which he espoused (Puritanism) flourished.

*To exercise*.—to create, to exert.

*Direct power*.—direct influence. The Parliament in the reign of James I in 1604 consisted of a majority of Puritans who offered a check to James concerning the 'divine right of kings' and the 'divine right of bishops'.

*When its effort &c*.—the restoration in 1660 was the cause of the failure of Puritanism.

*To mould them &c.*—the object of the Puritans was to give a Puritan shape to the Politics and religion of England.

*When it had sunk &c.*—when it ceased to influence English *Politics* and English *religion* and began to influence English *character*. The present state of English character is due to several influences one of them being Puritanism.

(NOTE.—The word *sunk* contains an instance of decayed or constant Metaphor. The influence of Puritanism is compared to the in-coming tidal wave of a river. Like Puritan influence in the first flush of its vigour, the river swells up and rushes on roaring, but when it has attained the fullness of its strength, it sinks into its ordinary level, but the under current is as strong as ever).

*His earlier verse*—the poems he wrote in his early life ending with his return from the continent in 1638. These poems are *L'allegro* 'Ilpenseroso', 'Arcades', 'Comus' and 'Lycidas'. These poems are full of human sympathy and love for social joys and refinement.

*The pamphlets &c.*—the pamphlets which Milton wrote when of mature age. This period extended from 1638 to the Restoration.

The most famous of these was *Iconoclastes* "the Image Breaker", in which he attacked Charles I after his execution.

*The epics of his age*—the epic poems which Milton wrote when of advanced age. This period lasted from the Restoration to his death. These poems are *Paradise Lost*, *Paradise Regained* and *Samson Agonistes*.

*Mark*—show, point out.

*Singular precision*—peculiar exactness, striking preciseness.

*The three great stages*—the three stages of Puritanism may be described thus. In the first stage there was hardly any difference between Puritanism and Presbyte-

rianism. During this period the higher and more elegant sides of the Elizabethan period harmonised well with the temper of the Puritans. In the second period Puritanism entered upon an active career and attempted at the introduction of the kingdom of God by force. There was therefore no pity for the old or sympathy with culture and enlightenment. In the third and last stage Puritanism fell back upon contemplation and isolated itself from human society. The three stages in Milton's life were. (1) Love of culture and human sympathy (2) Love for force and an antipathy against all that was old (3) absence of human sympathy and the consolations of a gloomy fanaticism.

*Gaiety*—cheerfulness. (The Puritans took a great pleasure in amusements).

*Poetic ease*—soft emotions of the mind.

*Intellectual culture*—learning.

*Renascence*—the revival of classical learning which was started by Colet, Erasmus and Moore in the reign of Henry VIII and which had reached perfection in the reign of Elizabeth.

*Lingered*—remained behind.

*Scrivener*—the profession of a scrivener included all work now done by lower stationers (vendors of stamps &c.) with the simple branches of an attorney's business such as drafting of wills and leases &c.

*Precisian*—one too precise in his speech.

*Lute*—a stringed instrument of the guitar kind.

*Organ*—a wind instrument with several pipes played upon by means of keys.

*Finest outbursts*—a passage famous for its poetic imagery and eloquent vehemence.

*Scheme*—plan.

*Scheme of education*—this refers to his 'Tractate on education' published by him in 1644.



*At a later time*—when he returned from his travel and set up as a schoolmaster.

*Vindicates the province, &c.*—puts forth arguments to prove that music has a great influence in a man's moral training.

*His home*—his parents were strict Puritans.

*His tutor*—Milton's tutor was Mr Young, also a Puritan

*His school*—he read in the St. Paul's school.

*Training*—education.

*Rigidly*—severely.

*His home.....training*—although his father was a Puritan and he read in a Puritan school under a private tutor who was also a Puritan, yet he had a liberal training in his early days, because his father was not a bigoted Puritan.

*Destined*—settled previously.

*Humane letters*—Greek and Latin literature, so called because these writings contained tender ideas, which excited sympathetic feelings in the minds of the readers.

*Seized with such eagerness*—pursued these studies so eagerly.

*Scrivener*—i.e., his father who was by profession a scrivener.

*Letters*—learning, literature.

*Spenser gave.....genius*—his poetic imagination was at an early stage influenced by the writings of Spenser (Remarkable traces of this influence is found in his early writings such as 'Comus', 'Arcades' 'L'allegro' &c).

*Could avow his love of the stage*—could express his liking for the theatre.

*Sock*—lit, a low-heeled shoe put on by comic writers, here used for comedy itself.

*Sweetest Shakespeare*—here used to show a contrast between the comedies of Ben Jonson and those of Shakespeare. Ben Jonson's writings were pedantic while those of Shakespeare sweet and fanciful.

*Fancy's child*—the child or production of fancy. The goddess of imagination had bestowed all her gifts on Shakespeare.

*Warble his native &c.*—sang his wild music. As a bird sings naturally without any sort of training, so Shakespeare sang like a bird without much education.

*Native*—natural.

*Wild*—because Shakespeare did not observe any of the laws of writing idiomatically.

*Gathered from the masques &c.*—shaped his own writings in Comus and Arcades according to what he saw in masques &c., in courts.

*Masque*—is a dramatic performance in which all the actors appear masked.

*Antique pugeantry*—fantastic and semi-barbarous representations of old days.

*Shadow*—presentiment.

*Struggle*—strife, contest (as Latin Secretary Milton wrote pamphlets in answer to attacks on Puritanism).

*Rêverie*—train of thought and meditation.

*Embowed*—arched.

*Antique*—old fashioned

*Mass of proof*—proof against weight.

*Richly dight*—gorgeously decorated.

*Storied windows*—windows painted with stories from the Bible or the lives of saints &c.

*Casting.....light*—the darkness of the church within is favourable for religious meditation.

*Dim religious light*—is an instance of transferred epithet.

*Pealing organ*—the organ played upon and sending forth a volume of sound.

*Full voiced choir*—a band of singers who have raised their voice to the highest pitch and in all the four notes of music, viz., treble, tenor, alto and bass.

*In service high*—while the choir are singing in the act of supreme worship.

*Anthem clear*—while the choir are singing distinctly the Psalms and responses.

The meaning of the whole passage is that in Milton's early writings we do not find the antipathy against the English church that we find in his later writings.

The first passage is quoted from Milton's *L'Allegro* and the second from his *Il Penseroso*.

PARA. 2. His enjoyment.....Puritanism—The enjoyment of the pleasures of society which Milton felt in early life stands in marked contrast with the solitary and gloomy existence which he led later. (In his early youth Milton enjoyed all the pleasures of society, but as he grew old, he gave up all the joys of society and lived a solitary life cut off from all social intercourse)

*A certain reservedness &c*—Milton was naturally very shy and uncommunicative.

*Shrank from*—fled from, ran away from.

*Festivities and jests*—social gatherings and merry makings.

*I acknowledge &c.*—I have no natural power to shine in these social gatherings.

*Young singer*—Milton. He wrote his *L'allegro* when he was only 24 years old.

*Could still enjoy &c.*—could still feel pleasure in the merry makings of the young men of his time.

*Quip*—a tit for tat. A short retort.

*Crank*—a pun in which the meanings of words are twisted.

*Wanton wiles*—wild or mischievous tricks.

*Crew*—crowd.

*Mirth*—merry people.

*Look pleasantly &c.*—he could take pleasure in the sports &c., of village people who assembled at the fairs.

*Rebeck*—a musical instrument like a fiddle.

*To many a youth*—while dancing they kept time with the music.

*Chcquered shade*—there were patches of light and shade on the ground where they danced.

*His pleasures&c.*—He always took part in innocent pleasure.

*Ascetic*—grave, austere.

*Slender*—thin.

*Vigorous frame*—strong body.

*Delicate.....beauty*—his face showed a feminine softness yet there was a touch of melancholy in it.

*Clustered*—fell in curls.

*Sensitive enjoyment*—enjoyment which left impressions on his mind.

*Coarse*—vulgar.

*Sensual self indulgence*—indulgence of one's own self in the gratification of the lower appetites.

*Certain reservedness &c.*,—the word is niceness and not reservedness. He was very fastidious in his selection of friends.

*Honest haughtiness &c.*,—he honestly believed in his high merit and was proud on that account.

*Self esteem*—self respect.

*Low descents of mind*—low degradations.

*He drank in &c.*—his mind was filled with chivalrous ideas of truth, chastity &c., which he borrowed from Spenser.

*Disdained*—hated. Looked down upon.

*The outer pledge*—the formal utterance of an oath.

*Chivalry built up &c.*,—most of the knights maintained their high standard of virtue through a fear of breaking the oath taken by them and not through any nobility of character.

*But his religions &c.*,—every knight had to take an oath that he would at any cost defend the honor and chastity of every virgin or maid. Milton being a Puritan could not countenance the taking of this oath.

*Every free and gentle spirit*—every nobleman, every man of noble birth.

*Ought to be born a knight*—ought to act as a knight.

*Every free and gentle spirit &c.*—knights in these days had to take an oath that they would help the poor and do such noble deeds. But Milton says that a man of noble birth ought to do these things without taking an oath.

*Temper*—idea of practising virtue.

*Preserved*—maintained.

*Career*—life. *Reproach*—stain.

*Approved*—spoken well of.

*Purpose*—determination.

*Self-dedication*—devotion of one's own self.

*With a purpose &c.*—he was determined to follow the path of virtue to which, he said, God would by and by call him, no matter in what state of life he was placed.

PARA. 3. *Civil war*—war between the king and the Parliament from 1642 to 1649.

*Milton was engaged &c.*—at the time when war broke out between the king and the Parliament, Milton took the side of the popular party and wrote some pamphlets against the bishops.

*Civil freedom*—political liberty against the crown. (Milton wrote about civil freedom in his pamphlets, 'Tenure of king' and 'A defence of the English people' &c.)

(a) *Religious freedom*—religious liberty against the prelates. (Milton wrote about religious freedom in his pamphlets, 'Prelatical episcopacy' and 'Reason of Church Government' &c.) Liberty of method in worshipping God otherwise than in the Church of England.

(b) *Freedom of social life*—domestic liberty. (Milton wrote about this in his pamphlet on 'Divorce'.) Liberty of living one's life in society otherwise than what the cavaliers lived.

(c) *Freedom of the Press*—liberty of the Press. Liberty

to print and publish things other than those approved by the Government.

*Latin Secretary*—at that time all communications with other Governments were made in Latin. Milton possessed a sound knowledge of Latin, he was therefore appointed secretary.

*In spite of*—notwithstanding.

*Brought on*—caused

*Defence of the English people*—this was a pamphlet written by Milton in which he justified the execution of the king, Charles I.

*Common hangman*—the hangman of the town.

*Threats of assassination*—fear of being murdered.

*Fanatical cavaliers*—mad extremists of the king's party.

*Cause*—the political and religious party which he had joined.

*Personal misfortunes*—misfortunes which affected his private life i.e., his life as a private individual.

*Scrivener*—money lender.

*Bulk*—the greater part. He lost £ 2000 by the dishonesty of a money lender.

*Fire of London*—the great fire which took place in 1666. His house in Bread street was destroyed in the great fire of London

*As age grew on &c.*—as he became older and older he became poor in comparison with the affluence of his circumstances in early years.

*Driven*—obliged, compelled.

*Subsistence*—maintenance of himself and his family.

*Sectaries*—members of a particular religious belief.

*Shared his political opinions*—possessed the same political views.

*Religious opinion*—although he shared his political views, his religious opinion was entirely different from theirs.

*Severed*—separated. .

*Accepted form of faith*—those sects which were recognised in the Christian world.

*Embraced*—professed, accepted.

*Arianism*—preachings of Arius, a religious reformer or heretic of the 3rd century who preached that Christ was a created being and was inferior to God. Orthodox Christians believe that God, Christ and Holy Ghost are all equal.

*Ceased*—put a stop to.

*Grace and geniality*—in his youth his manners were elegant, polished and cheerful.

*The drudgery of a schoolmaster's life*—after his return from his travels, he set up a school. As he had to go through the same routine of studies year after year, he became sour tempered.

*Invectives of controversy*—abuses in which he indulged in his controversial writings.

*Controversy*—argumentative contention in words and writings.

*In age*—in old age.

*Stern*—austere, gloomy.

*Exacting*—unduly severe.

*His daughters*—he had three daughters by his first wife.

*Revolted utterly against &c.*—threw off their obligation as daughters i.e., they openly disobeyed their father and would not submit to the slavery he imposed on them.

PARA 4.—*Brought out in bolder relief*—set off more clearly.

*Inner greatness*—the greatness of his inner character and mind.

*Solitude and misfortune, etc.*—the true nobleness of his character was shown in this hour of his calamity and loneliness.

*Grand simplicity &c.*—there was a plainness in his mode of living in later years which was accompanied with high occupation.

*Musing in silence*—meditating silently *i.e.*, passing some time in religious contemplation.

*Renewed*—commenced again.

*In converse with*—in conversation with.

*Unpopular*—not loved by the public.

*As—though.*

*A place of pilgrimage*—a holy shrine.

*Wits of the Restoration*—clever men of poetic genius of the time of the Restoration.

*The last of the Elizabethans*—Milton did not flourish in the time of Elizabeth but his thoughts and mode of writing were similar to those of Elizabethan poets. He is therefore called the last of the Elizabethans.

*The playwright—i.e.*, Shakspeare.

*Wit combats*—witty repartee, learned discussions.

*Mermaid*—the mermaid was an inn or club in Bread Street, Cheapside.

*Webster*—was an eminent dramatic poet who flourished in the 17th century.

*Crashaw*—an English dramatist.

*Rivalled*—equalled, *i.e.*, Milton's '*Comus* and *Arcades*' were pronounced to be as sweet and powerful as the masques of Ben Johnson.

*Reverence drawn &c.*,—it was with a reverence *i.e.*, awe, respect and affection inspired by thoughts like these that Dryden called on Milton to ask permission to verify his poem *Paradise Lost*.

*Hung with &c.*,—the walls of his room were lined with soiled old hangings of green silk containing ornamental figures.

*Rusty*—old, he was too poor to buy a fresh tapestry.

*Brown hair falling &c.*,—though a puritan he did not cut his hair short.

*Fair*—light.

*Serene face*—calm face, though he was in misfortune his face did not show any signs of anxiety.



*Delicately coloured*—there was a soft tinge of red colour on his cheek.

*Trace*—sign.

*But famous.....singer*—but although he had become famous on account of his prose writings, his poetic faculties lay dormant all these years and his silence as poet was only broken by his sonnets.

*Broken*—interrupted.

*Whether for good or ill*—whether for good or bad. His fame had cost him his eyes, and the loss of his worldly properties.

*Cause he loved*—Puritanism and Republicanism.

*Trodden under foot*—wholly crushed

*As the rabble in Comus*—as the crew of Comus were men who indulged in the lower passions so the courtiers of Charles II were also of the same nature.

*Took refuge in*—took shelter in, took rest in.

*Great poem*—refers to paradise Lost.

*Through years of silence &c.*,—he always had in his mind the idea of writing the great and noble poem

*Brooding*—constantly thinking of.

PARA 5.—*Return from his travels*—he returned in 1641.

*Musing on*—thinking of.

*Not to be raised from*—not to be inspired by.

*Heat of youth*—excitement of youth. the natural warmth of youth which is supposed by some as the source of poetic inspiration.

*Vapours of wine*—a nervous excitement caused by wine in which strange images come to one's mind. Some people suppose this excitement to be the source of poetic inspiration.

*At waste*—to a degree of superfluity.

*Vulgar amourist*—a love poet whose descriptions of love are immoral and obscene.

*Trencher fury*—greedy appetite. Trencher is the plate on which food is cut, hence food itself.

*Rhyming parasite*—a poetaster who writes poems in praise of his patrons.

*Invocation*—calling in. The Greeks invoked the deities because they thought that they had the power of inspiring poetic feelings.

*Dame memory*—Mnemosyne, the goddess of memory had nine daughters by Jupiter. These daughters were called the muses.

*Devout*—earnest. *Eternal spirit*—God. *Who can enrich &c.*,—who can give us the knowledge of everything and endow us with the power of speech.

*Hallowed fire of his altar*—this contains an allusion to the book of the prophet Isaiah VI chapter, 5, 6 and 7 verses, and refers to the purifying and inspiring influence granted to mortals at times by God.

*To touch and purify*—to make pure. As Isaiah became pure by burning coals being placed on his lips, so Milton says, that he became pure as soon as God bestowed his grace upon him.

The meaning is that good poetry cannot be written by youthful feelings or the excitement of wine or by obscene love poets or by poets dependent upon others or by devotion to the Muses. It can be written only when God makes a man pure and thereby gives him clean lips.

*His lips &c.*,—he was after all endowed with poetic inspiration by God.

*Seven years &c.*,—the Restoration was in 1660 and *Paradise Lost* appeared in 1667.

*Severe grandeur*—rigid purity and loftiness of style.

*Fallen on evil days and evil tongues*—leading an obscure life in poverty, and maligned by people. From the points of resemblance between Samson and Milton's lives it would appear that in writing *Samson Agonistes* Milton depicted his own life.

*With darkness*—both Samson and Milton were blind.

*With danger compassed round*—As Samson had enemies all round him, so had Milton who had to live amidst threats of being assassinated by fanatical cavaliers.

*Compassed*—surrounded.

*As—though. Eclipsed*—cast into the shade.

*Predecessor*—Paradise Lost.

*But great as &c.*,—but although Paradise Regained and Samson Agonistes had high merits yet Paradise Lost surpassed them both in style and poetical sentiments.

*The whole genius &c.*,—In Paradise Lost Milton's genius is seen in its highest and most entire form.

*The Romance*—the chief element in a romance is bravery of action and an expression of noble and heroic sentiments.

*The gorgeous fancy*—the description of grand and beautiful scenes in great numbers.

*The daring imagination*—the high flights of imagination.

*The large but ordered beauty &c.*,—the high but chaste and methodical ideal of tragedy which he had formed from the excessive study of Latin and Greek tragedies. (Milton had modelled his Paradise Lost in the form of Latin and Greek tragedies).

*Note*—A beautiful idea of the poet's mind receives its "beauty of form" when the same idea is expressed in beautiful phrases, embodied in beautiful characters and placed in beautiful surroundings, all of which is found in Paradise Lost. When the same abstract idea is reduced into a concrete form, on a large but methodically arranged scale, it assumes "*large but ordered beauty of form.*"

*Drunk in*—imbibed.

*The sublimity of conception*—the loftiness of ideas.

*The loftiness of phrase &c.*,—the high and elevated diction which he had taken from the Bible.

*Blended*—mixed.

*Of man's first disobedience &c.*,—these are the opening words of *Paradise Lost* and in fact, the subject of the poem. 'First 'disobedience' means man's disobedience of God for the first time and implies that he disobeyed God several times subsequently.

*Forbidden tree*—tree of knowledge.

*Mortal taste*—fatal taste.

When God created Adam and Eve, he placed them in the garden of Eden. He permitted them to eat all sorts of fruits except those of the tree of knowledge. But Adam, being enviously instigated by Satan through Eve ate the fruit of that forbidden tree. He was thereupon banished from the garden of Eden and was cursed with death and woe to his descendants.

*Review*—examine, scrutinise, view critically.

*Mingled*—mixed. *Elements*—matter, particulars.

*Realize*—form an exact idea of.

*Genius*—talent. *Fused*—mixed, blended.

*Perfect whole*—harmonious whole.

*It is only when we review &c.*,—the elements which go to make the poem, *Paradise Lost*, are perfectly incongruous and incompatible with each other, being drawn promiscuously from christian as well as heathen sources. None but a great genius could have united these incongruous elements into a harmonious whole.

*The meagre outline &c.*,—the events which are described in the Bible in other than full and simple manner.

*Lost*—completely submerged.

*The meagre outline.....verse*—the same events which are narrated in the Bible in a simple unadorned style are described by Milton in melodious verse. His genius lies in the fact that in spite of his splendid imagery he strictly keeps to the letter and spirit of the Bible,

*The stern idealism*—refers to the doctrine of John Calvin who was born in Geneva. His doctrine was very stern. It was that only certain persons would have the chance of salvation and the rest would be doomed to eternal damnation.

*Clothed*—dressed, here expressed.

*Gorgeous robes*—romantic and splendid beauties.

*The stern idealism &c.*,—the austere doctrines of Calvinism are set forth in *Paradise Lost* in such a gorgeous style and with such romantic beauty as was the characteristic of the Elizabethan poetry.

*Free play of Spenser's fancy &c.*,—Spenser gives a free and full scope to his imagination and hence we find in his poems a rapid flow of sweet harmony. Milton had to check his imagination on account of his beliefs and the morality which he wanted to preach.

*More of the imaginative &c.*,—the earlier dramatists Marlowe and Shakespeare &c. had a tender affection for the characters they created, hence we feel ourselves in thorough sympathy with the excellent life like characters depicted by them. Milton on the other hand had no such human sympathy with the characters he described.

*Ordered majesty &c.*,—of the methodical sublimity of form.

Milton could not show any originality in the characters which he described as they were already settled for him but he showed his originality in the form in which he expressed those ideas.

*If we miss &c.*—although we seek and do not find in Milton's poems the rapid flow of harmony resulting from a freedom of imagination as is found in the poems of the early dramatists such as Spenser etc. yet the sublimity of expression found in Milton's poems is univalued.

## APPENDIX.

### 1.—GENERAL.

Q 1. *Into how many stages can Milton's life be divided?*

A.—Milton's life can be divided into three different stages.

Q. 2—*Show that the three stages of Milton's life correspond to the three stages of Puritanism in England.*

A.—See notes.

Q. 3.—*Mention the remarkable events in the three stages of Milton's life.*

A.—In the first stage he led a cheerful and happy life. During this period he wrote gay and beautiful poems.

In the second stage he did what he could for the furtherance of liberty and wrote several pamphlets which made him famous throughout Europe.

In the third stage he led an obscure and cheerless life. During this period he wrote great epic poems.

Q. 4—*Mention some of the chief merits and defects of Paradise Lost.*

A.—The chief merits of *Paradise Lost* are (1) sublimity of style and of sentiments, (2) Gorgeous imagery, (3) A rich versification. The chief defects are (1) A want of sympathy for human affairs, (2) A feeling of restraint (3) An excessive amount of learning evinced in the poem.

Q. 5.—*Do we find any trace of Milton's private life in his poems?*

A.—In the severe grandeur of the verse of *Samson Agonistes* we find the poet himself "fallen" like Samson "on evil days and evil tongues, with darkness and with danger compassed round".

Q. 6.—*Whom does Green choose, besides Milton, as the highest type of Puritanism?*

A.—John Bunyan.

Q 7.—*What particular phases of English character can be traced to the influence of Puritanism?*

A.—Simplicity, dogged pertinacity and sincere love of truth.

## 2. GRAMMATICAL.

Q. 1.—*Parse the following :—*

PARA. 1.—Power, religion, to mould, character, mark.

PARA. 2.—University, will.

PARA. 3.—Threats, misfortunes, accepted, revolted.

PARA. 4.—Greatness, converse, clad.

PARA. 5.—Blended, strangely, example.

A—PARA. 1.—*Power*—abstract noun, objective case governed by the transitive verb *exercise*.

*Religion*—common noun, objective case, governed by the preposition *over*.

*To mould*—Gerundial Infinitive referring to the noun *effort*.

*Character*—Abstract noun, objective case, governed by the transitive verb *owe*.

*Mark*—Transitive verb, agreeing with its nominatives, *verse, pamphlets and epics*.

PARA. 2.—*University*—Noun used as an adjective qualifying *career*.

*Will*—Abstract noun, nominative case to the verb *leads* understood.

PARA. 3.—*Threats*—Common noun, objective case governed by the preposition *amidst*.

*Misfortunes*—Abstract noun, nominative case to the verb *were added*.

*Accepted*—Participial adjective qualifying the noun *form*.

*Revolted*—Intransitive verb agreeing with its nominative *daughters*.

PARA. 4.—*Greatness*—Abstract noun, objective case governed by the transitive verb *brought out*.

*Converse*—Common noun objective case governed by the preposition *in*.

*Glad*—Participle referring to the pronoun *he*.

PARA. 5.—*Blinded*—Intransitive verb agreeing with its nominatives *Romance, gorgeous fancy, daring imagination, ordered beauty, sublimity of conception and loftiness of phrase*.

*Strangely*—Adverb modifying the adjective *mingled*.

*Example*—Common noun objective case governed by the transitive verb *find*.

Q. 2.—*Turn the following sentence into the indirect form of speech.*

PARA. 1.—“My father, he says, destined.....midnight”.

A.—He said that his father destined him, while yet a little boy, to the study of human letters which he seized with such eagerness that from the twelfth year of his age he scarcely ever went from his lessons to bed before midnight.

Q. 3.—*Give the general analysis of the following sentence.*

PARA. 4.—It was with a reverence.....blindness.

A.—It is a complex sentence.

(a) It was.....these—Principal clause.

(b) That dryden.....poet—Noun clause subordinate to (a).

(c) As he sate.....face—Adverbial clause subordinate to (b).

(d) That still.....blindness—Adjective clause subordinate to (c).



## 3. GLOSSARY.

- Absolutely*—exactly.  
*Agent*—a person employed as a means. Here it means a living power.  
*Antique*—belonging to old days, old fashioned.  
*Anthem*—responses in the church service.  
*Ascetic*—grave, austere.  
*Assasination*—murder.  
*Accepted*—recognised.  
*Amourist*—a love poet.  
*Blended*—mixed.  
*Contrast*—opposition.  
*Crank*—a pun in which the meanings of words are twisted.  
*Clustered*—gathered.  
*Coarse*—vulgar.  
*Career*—life.  
*Controversy*—discussion.  
*Com passed*—surrounded.  
*Completest*—most perfect.  
*Contemporary*—belonging to the same time.  
*Destined*—set apart.  
*Disturb*—interrupt.  
*Dight*—decorated.  
*Drudgery*—hard and monotonous labour.  
*Devout*—earnest.  
*Exercise*—create, exert.  
*Epics*—epic poems i. e., poems which describe great events.  
*Eagerness*—earnestness,
- Embowed*—arched.  
*Embraced*—professed.  
*Exacting*—unduly severe.  
*Exquisite*—beautiful.  
*Fused*—intermingled.  
*Gaiety*—cheerfulness.  
*Gorgeous fancy*—description of splendid and beautiful scenes.  
*Gorgeous robes*—grand outfit.  
*Influences*—powers.  
*Intellectual culture*—learning.  
*Invectives*—abuses.  
*Invocation*—calling in the aid of.  
*Letters*—learning.  
*Legend*—story.  
*Mould*—shape.  
*Mark*—distinguish, show.  
*Masque*—it is a dramatic performance in which all actors appear masked.  
*Massy proof*—proof against weight.  
*Meagre*—poor, scanty.  
*Native*—natural.  
*Ordered majesty*—methodical sublimity of form.  
*Picturesque*—beautiful.  
*Power*—influence.  
*Pamphlets*—small books, tracts.  
*Precision*—exactness.

*Precisian*—the Puritans were called 'Precisians' from their preciseness of speech and avoidance of oaths and untruths.

*Province*—sphere.

*Pageantry*—showy representation.

*Pealing*—sounding.

*Parasite*—one who feeds on another.

*Quips*—a tit for tat, a sharp retort.

*Riper*—maturer.

*Renascence*—the age of Elizabeth. Revival of learning.

*Rigidly*—strictly.

*Riverie*—thought.

*Rebeck*—a musical instrument like a fiddle.

*Reproach*—blame.

*Rusty*—old.

*Singular*—peculiar.

*Scrivener*—the profession of scrivener included in those days almost all the work done by modern attorneys.

*Shadow*—presentiment.

*Sternness*—stiffness.

*Slender*—thin.

*Sensual*—pertaining to the senses in a bad sense.

*Self-indulgence*—self gratification.

*Subsistence*—maintenance.

*Sectaries*—members of a particular religious belief or sect.

*Stern*—austere, gloomy.

*Trace*—sign.

*Trencher fury*—greedy appetite

*Vindicates*—defends, justifies.

*Vigorous*—strong.

*Wanton wiles*—wild tricks.

## ESCAPE OF CHARLES II.

### INTRODUCTION.

*Conquest of Ireland and Scotland*—the Duke of Ormond had succeeded in uniting the Catholics and the Royalists &c., in favour of the young prince; but Cromwell was sent to Ireland with a large force to subdue it. He landed in Ireland on August 15, 1649 and within a few months became master of the country. In Scotland the young prince Charles II was proclaimed king immediately when the news of the king's execution reached there;

but Cromwell subdued Scotland also, in the course of a few months, (from June to September, 1651.)

*Resignation of Fairfax*—Fairfax who was a Presbyterian was asked to lead an army against the Presbyterians of Scotland, so he resigned his commission.

*Lord general*—the supreme commander. One who is vested with supreme authority in an office is called lord.

*Measures*—means.

*Ruthless severity*—merciless strictness. He conquered Ireland by a merciless massacre of the people.

*Which had proclaimed &c.*,—Charles II was proclaimed king by the Scots in February, 1649.

*Valley of Severn*—the broad plains on the banks of the Severn.

PARA. 1. *Whiteladies*—this was a house in a village in Shropshire. It belonged to one Mrs. Cotton of the Gifford family.

*Asylum*—a place of refuge or shelter where one is free from being caught by the enemies.

*Day break*—break of day i. e., early morning.

*Cut off his hairs*—the locks of hair on his head were cut off by Penderell so that he may pass for a Roundhead.

*Stained his hands and face*—his hands and face were coloured brown with walnuts.

*Assumed*—put on. *Coarse*—rough.

*Threadbare*—old and worn out. *Peasant*—rustic.

*Domestics*—house servants.

*Undertook to secure his safety*—took upon themselves the task of helping the prince to escape.

*Preserve him*—defend him from danger, defend him from falling into the hands of the enemies.

*Boscobel House*—Boscobel was near Donington in Shropshire. This house also belonged to Mrs. Cotton.

*Concealed him*—kept him hidden.

*Adjoining woods*—neighbouring woods.

*Supply*—a sufficient quantity.

*Faithful to*—true or loyal towards.

*I would die sooner than betray you*—sooner=rather  
i e., I would rather die than deceive you by putting you  
in the hands of the enemy.

*Outskirts*—borders.

*The storm was more violent &c.*,—it was because the  
fury of the storm is felt most on the trees and woods,  
The open fields are always safe from the fury of the  
storm on account of the woods.

*Leafy branches*—dense foliage.

*Cover*—hiding place.

*Scouring*—rummaging, passing swiftly over a place  
in search of some body.

*Endeavour*—attempt, try.

*The Severn*—the Severn is to the west of Worcester.  
Shropshire lies to the west of the Severn and forms the  
eastern boundary of Wales.

*Take refuge in Wales*—take shelter in Wales where  
the prince had many partisans.

*Miller*—one who owns a mill.

*Knock you down*—kill you, fire on you.

*Fording*—crossing a river by walking through it.

*Helped his guide across*—helped his guide to cross  
the river.

PARA. 2. *Wandered*—moved about.

*Changing his place &c.*,—shifting from one place to  
another as he had not yet thought in what way to make  
his escape.

*Sometimes hidden &c.*,—he remained hidden under  
the hay in a barn when at Madeley, the house of a Catho-  
lic gentleman named Wolf.

*Obscure hiding places*—dark underground cells in  
which the Catholic priests used to hide themselves.

*Retreat*—a place of shelter,

*Proscribed*—put out of the protection of Law, hence doomed to destruction.

*Proscribed.....priests*—A Law called the bill of Attainder was passed against many Roman Catholic priests who went to forests and caves of mountains &c., to save their lives. Charles I was friendly to the Roman Catholics, hence they were loyal to his son.

*In concert with*—In consultation with. Under the advice of.

*Faithful guards*—the Penderell brothers and their brother-in-law Yates.

*Lord Wilmot*—He was the father of the poet Rochester who flourished in the reign of Charles II. He was the first Earl of Rochester. He had brought the king over from France and had fought in the battle of Worcester.

*To make for*—to try to go in the direction of.

*Seacoast near Bristol*—Bristol is to the south-west of Worcester. It is close to the Bristol channel. It is an important sea-port, next to London.

*Disguise*—false dress. *Assumed*—put on.

*Livery*—a uniform given to servants. (originally it means anything given freely).

*Garb*.—dress. *Set off*—started.

*Mistress*—he was to appear now as the servant of Miss Lane.

*Colonel Lane*—he was a colonel in the king's service.

*Staffordshire*—It is to the north-west of Worcester.

*At starting*—at the time of starting or setting out.

*Unused*—unaccustomed. *Offices*—duties.

*Wrong hand*—he offered the palm of the right hand whereas he ought to have offered that of the left hand.

*Goodly horseman*—a fine rider, (said ironically).

*Watching*—standing and looking.

*Unacquainted with the secret*—was not aware of the secret, did not know the secret that it was Charles II.

*Set off*—started.

*Cast shoe*—one of the iron shoes dropped off from the horse's hoof.

*Halted*—stopped.

*Holding the horse's foot*—lifting the foot of the horse. (This was his duty as a servant.)

*Narrative*—description, account.

*Smith*—the blacksmith, the man who was putting the shoe on to the horse's foot.

*What news*—if he knew or had heard anything of the topics of the day.

*Good news* happy news.

*Beating of those rogues*—the defeat of those wicked men, the Scots

*Deserved to be hanged*—was fit to be punished by being hanged.

*For bringing in the Scots*—for bringing the Scots into England, (here the king humoured the man's antipathy against the Scots.)

*I spoke like an honest man.*—I spoke the truth.

PARA. 3. *Abbotsleigh*—a village in Somersetshire.

*To his great sorrow*—To denotes result or effect here

*On board which* - on the board of which. Prep. phrase governing *which* in the Obj. case.

*Embark*—sail.

*Under pretence of indisposition*—pretending to be ill.

*Indulged*—allowed to live.

*Particular*—special.

*He was really.....fatigued*—he was in a state of mental and physical exhaustion.

*Ennui*—tedium, a feeling of being bored.

*Little inclined &c*,—he wished even now to have good food and company, and conversation. Not at all disposed,

*Being more afraid.....enemy's*—he being one of my own men there was more chance of his recognising me than if he had been one of my enemy's men.

PARA. 4. *Companions*—friends.

*Buttery-hatch*—a cellar in which butter and milk &c., are kept.

*Butler*—is a servant in a house who is chiefly in charge of the liquor, plates &c.

*Fell to*—began to eat greedily.

*Ale*—beer of inferior quality made of barley.

*Sack*—a richer kind of wine.

*To which*—To denotes addition here, and means in addition to which.

*A country fellow*—a rustic, a peasant.

*Sat just by me*—(*who* is understood before *sat*) who sat close by me.

*Particular an account &c.*—gave such a minute description of the battle of Worcester.

*Concluded*—gathered, inferred.

*Good an account*—such a faithful and correct description.

*Questioning him further*—asking him further details.

*Regiment of guards*—batch of soldiers who are stationed about a king or prince to protect him.

*I was*—i. e., the prince was. I asked him to describe the appearance of the prince.

*Both my clothes etc.*—by giving a description of both the clothes I had put on and the horse I had ridden.

*Three fingers*—the breadth of 3 fingers.

*What haste I could etc.*—I went out of the buttery as fast as I could.

*Indeed*—fully.

*For fear etc.*—fearing that he should fully recognise me.

*In great agitation*—in great excitement, in a state of confusion.

*Very positively*—very definitely.

*In positions of danger.....necessity*—in perilous conditions it is better boldly to trust others and depend upon them. Mistrust in others is often the source of safety as well as it is a necessity

*The most intelligent etc.*,—the butler served him very zealously and faithfully and was at the same time intelligent enough not to betray the secret entrusted to him.

· *PARA 5.—Attention*—care.

· *Discreetly*—prudently, cautiously.

*Prove compromising*—are apt to expose one to the risk of danger.

*But attentions.....compromising*—but care even when shown to a person cautiously sometimes exposes the person to whom it is shown, to danger.

*Colonel Wyndham*—he had fought on the king's side and was the governor of Dunstar castle.

*Staunch*—steadfast.

*Out break etc.*—the Civil war commenced in 1642.

*Scen* - lived in the midst of.

*Serene and quiet times*—times free from disturbance of any kind.

*Cloudy and troublesome—times* is understood after it. It means times full of all sorts of dangers and disasters.

*Gracious*—full of the grace of God.

*In all times*—always.

*To adhere to the crown*—to take the king's side.

*Should hang upon a bush etc.*—should be attached to a bush of thorns, i.e., even when the king is defeated and humbled, he should not be forsaken.

*Injunctions*—instructions, directions.



*Served with honour*—had distinguished himself by his service,

*A prisoner on parole* he was allowed to remain in his own house and enjoy certain privileges on his having pledged his words to certain conditions e.g., not to take arms against his captors or attempt to run away.

*Utmost devotedness*—utmost care i.e., he received the king most zealously.

*Set to work*—began to take active measures.

*Immediately*—at once.

*Some means of embarkation &c.*—some ship on which he could sail for some neighbouring foreign port.

*Efforts*—attempts. *Fruitless*—unsuccessful. *Watch*—vigilance. *Despair*—disappointment, hopelessness.

PARA. 6.—*The means of transport to France.*—a vessel in which he could go from England to France.

*Residence*—place of living.

*More and more suspected*—more and more doubted.

*Ere long*—before a long time had elapsed.

*More and more suspected*—when Wilmot and Charles were lying at the inn waiting for the vessel, the feet of their horses were examined by a blacksmith who found out that the horses had travelled from a long distance. The news reached the preacher who sent for an officer and had the inn searched and horses sent in pursuit of Charles and Wilmot.

*Hele house*—it was a place three miles from Salisbury, a county town of Wiltshire. *Small sea ports &c.*—one of these seaports was expected to supply with a vessel.

*Last hiding place*—i.e., Trent house which belonged to Col. Wyndham.

*Escorted*—accompanied by.

*As if for*—on the pretence of.

*Coursing expedition*—hunting excursion.

*Downs*—an elevated land near the sea covered with fine turf, sandy hillocks.

*Hamshire*—the same as Southampton.

*Col Gunter*—he was a gentleman belonging to Sussex. He had served the king in the war.

*Guides*—companions, escorts.

*Master of the house*—Mr. Phillips who was the brother in-law of Col Gunter.

*Unknown guests*—guests whom he did not know.

*Gaiety*—mirth.

*Exceeded*—passed beyond. *Bounds*—limits.

*Decent hilarity*—proper and seemly amusement.

*Whose gaiety etc.*—who were so boistrous in their merry-making that they went beyond what was proper.

*Cropped*—cut short.

*Reproof*—reprimand, scolding.

*Administered*—gave.

*Casual oath*—an oath or strong expression uttered by chance, accidental oath.

*Redoubled*—increased.

*Surprise*—curiosity. (He was surprised to find unknown guests at his table and he himself being a Cavalier was very much surprised to find them of a Puritanic nature).

*Bent towards*—stooped down towards, *i.e.*, told him in his ear.

*Brother-in-law—i.e.*, Gunter. *That fellow*—the king.

*Rogue*—rascal. (According to the Cavaliers every Puritan was a rogue).

*Assured*—gave assurance.

*Unfounded*—baseless, unreasonable.

*His suspicions etc.*—he was under a wrong impression.

*Upon which*—hearing which.

*Gaily*—cheerfully, with pleasure.

*Drank etc.*—drank a full glass of beer and while drink-

ing wished the king's health in whose honour the ale was drunk.

*Good glass*—a glass filled to the brim.

*Brother Roundhead*—you may be a Roundhead or a Puritan by birth, but you are one of us.

PARA. 7.—*Master of the vessel*—Mr. Tattersall, the Captain.

*Merchant*—Mr. Mansell.

*Engaged*—hired.

*Supped together*—taken their supper together.

*Village inn*—this inn was called the George inn.

*Scarcely once took his eyes off the king*—constantly looked at the king.

*Dealt fairly with him*—behaved honestly with him.

*Clear*—frank,

*When he commanded*—the fleet referred to is the one which had revolted from the Parliamentarians and had gone over to Holland. The Prince had taken the command of the fleet and sailed to the downs. The fleet went back to Holland.

*Be not troubled at it*—be not anxious on account of this &c., although I know your secret, you need not be anxious for it.

*Good service*—important and useful service (=work).

*Preserving*—saving the life of the king.

*By the grace of God*.—God permitting.

*I will venture my life etc.*—I will risk my life and property for his sake and land him safely in France.

*All*—here means all his belongings.

*Innkeeper*—the proprietor of the inn.

*Suddenly*—without previous notice.

*I do not doubt.....lady*—I am sure you will come back and reign again as king of the country and you will then bestow a peerage on me as my reward.

*Putting full trust in his host*—believing that the inn-keeper will not betray him.

*Shoreham*—a town of Sussex with a harbour.

*Wre at sea*—weighed anchor.  
*Protesting*—solemnly declaring.  
*Entire devotedness*—warm attachment. He said that he was entirely attached to his cause.

*All difficulty*—all chances of detection.

*Persuade*—induce.

*Embarked*—went on board the ship.

*Poole*—a seaport in Dorsetshire.

*Rouen*—a city in Normandy.

*He should himself etc.*—it was arranged that the Captain should insist on sailing towards Poole. The king should then induce the crew to sail towards France on two grounds, *viz*, (1) that the king was a merchant in debt who was afraid to land on the English coast and (2) that he wished to go to France to realise some money which was due to him there.

*Acceded to this proposition*—agreed to this proposal.

*Ingratiate with*—find favour with.

*Course*—the direction in which he was wishing to sail.

*In favour of*—to be of service to, to oblige, to help.

*The weather was fine*—the sky was clear.

*The wind favourable*—the wind which was blowing at the time was favourable for sailing towards the direction in which they were sailing.

*Fecamp*—a seaport town in Normandy.

---

## APPENDIX.

### 1. GENERAL.

*Q.*—Mention some interesting incidents in connection with the escape of Charles II.

*A.*—(a) The prince gave the wrong hand to Miss Lane when she was going to mount her horse and was rebuked for doing so by Mrs. Lane.

(b) The conversation which took place between him and the blacksmith who called him as that rogue, Charles Stuart.

(c) the occurrence at the buttery hatch where he was very nearly recognised.

*Q.—Mention the places where Charles II had concealed himself.*

(1) Whiteladies in Shropshire He took refuge in the Cottage of Penderell—4th to 6th September.

(2) Boscobel House also in Shropshire belonging to Mrs. Cotton of the Gifford family—7th and 8th September.

(3) Mosseley, the Priest's Hole, the house of Mr. Whitegrave—8th to 10th September.

(4) Bentley in Staffordshire, the house of Col. Lane.—10th and 11th September.

(5) Hambledon in Hampshire, the house of Mr. Philips, the brother-in-law of Col. Gunter—15th to 17th September.

(6) Abbotsleigh, near Bristol, the house of Mr. Norton, a cousin of Col. Lane—17th to 19th September.

(7) Trent in Dorsetshire, the house of Col. Wyndham,—19th September to the 8th October.

(8) Hele in Wiltshire, the house of Mr. Hyde—8th to 15th October.

(9) Brighthelmstone.

(10) Fecamp in Normandy—17th October,

## 2.—GRAMMATICAL.

*Q. 1.—Give the general analysis of the following.*

PARA. 2.—He wandered for seven days.....him.

PARA. 4.—Charles had no sooner.....it.

*Q. 2.—Turn the following into the indirect form of speech.*

PARA. 7.—(a) He answered: No, I am not; for he took myship.....France.

(b) God bless you.....lady.

A.—PARA. 2.—a complex sentence.

- (a) He wandered.....hiding places hearing or seeing.....soldiers—Principal clause.
- (b) Which served.....priests—Adjective clause subordinate to (a) qualifying *hiding place*.
- (c) Who had been.....him—Adjective clause subordinate to (a) qualifying *soldiers*.

PARA. 4 —A compound sentence.

- (a) Charles had.....room—Principal clause.
- (b) Than one of his.....agitation - Principal clause in capulative co-ordination with (a).
- (c) And said.....Principal clause in copulative co-ordination with (b).
- (d) What shall we do—Noun clause subordinate to (c).
- (e) I am afraid.....you—Noun clause subordinate to (c).
- (f) For he says.....me—Adverbial clause subordinate to (e) modifying the verb *knows*.
- (g) That is you—Noun clause subordinate to (f).
- (h) But I have denied it—Adverbial clause subordinate to (f) modifying *says*.

A. 2.—

- (a) He answered that he was not (mistaken) for he (the king) took his ship together with other fishing vessels at Brighthelmston, in the year 1648, when he commanded his father's fleet; but asked him (the merchant) not to be troubled at that, for he thought that he (the captain) did God and his country good service in preserving the king and by the grace of God he would venture his life and all for him and set him safely on shore, if he could, in France.
- (b) He prayed that God bless him wheresoever he went and that he did not doubt to be a lord before he died and his wife a lady.

## 3.—GLOSSARY.

- Asylum*—a place of shelter.  
*Assumed*—put on.  
*Adjoining*—neighbouring, close by.  
*Agitation*—excitement, commotion.  
*Adhere to*—stick to, remain attached to.  
*Astonished*—surprised.  
*Acceded to*—agreed to, gave consent to.  
*Betray*—expose, deliver.  
*Butler*—steward, a servant in a house in charge of liquors and plates &c.  
*Bounds*—limits.  
*Coarse*—rough.  
*Concealed*—lay hidden.  
*Companions*—friends.  
*Compromising*—apt to be disclosed, injurious.  
*Concert with*—conjunction with.  
*Commanded*—ordered.  
*Day break*—break of day, early morning.  
*Domestics*—house servants.  
*Disguise*—dress.  
*Departure*—going, starting from one place to another.  
*Denied*—refused, not confessed.  
*Discreetly*—cautiously, judiciously.  
*Endeavour*—try.
- Ennui*—a feeling of disgust, vexation.  
*Escorted*—accompanied.  
*Fatigued*—tired.  
*Fell to*—began.  
*Gaiety*—mirth.  
*Garments*—dress.  
*Gracious*—full of grace, rich in the grace of God.  
*Harassed*—troubled in mind.  
*Hilarity*—amusement.  
*Harbour*—a port for ships.  
*Immediately*—at once, without delay.  
*Indisposition*—illness.  
*Indulged*—allowed to live.  
*Injunctions*—instructions.  
*Ingratiate with*—found favour with.  
*Labourers*—day labourers.  
*Livery*—dress, uniform.  
*Narrative*—description.  
*Overtaken*—encountered.  
*Outskirts*—suburbs, outer limits, border.  
*Proclaimed*—declared.  
*Preserve*—defend.  
*Procure*—secure.  
*Prescribed*—doomed to destruction, put out of the protection of law.  
*Pretence*—pretext.  
*Positively*—certainly.  
*Parole*—lit word of mouth,

here word of honour.  
*Proceeded*—went further.  
*Proposition*—proposal.  
*Ruthless*—merciless.  
*Refuge* - a place of shelter.  
*Retreat*—refuge, shelter.  
*Republican*—belonging to  
 the Republic.  
*Reproof*—rebuke, r e p r i -  
 maud.  
*Severity*—strictures.  
*Scouring*—running swiftly

over a place.  
*Sovereigns*—king.  
*Staunch*—strict, bigoted.  
*Serene*—calm.  
*Suspected*—doubted.  
*Threadbare*—old and torn.  
*Utterly*—completely.  
*Unacquainted* unaware.  
*Unfounded*—unreasonable.  
*Violent*—strong.  
*Wandered*—roamed, walked.

THE END.





# FLODDEN FIELD.

---

INTRODUCTION:—*With*—at the same time ; simultaneously. *Accession*—coming to the possession of the crown ) *House of Tudor*—Catherine of France, the widow of Henry V married a Welsh knight, Owen Tudor, Their son Edmund Tudor married Margaret Beaufort, the legitimized descendant of John of Gaunt, the third son of Edward III. Henry VII was the son of Edmund Tudor and Margaret Beaufort. *Civil wars*—here refers to the wars of the Roses, between the House of York, and the House of Lancaster, the one had a red rose for its badge, while the other had a white rose. Henry VII by his marriage combined the two roses. *Aim*—Object. The chief thing Henry VII wanted and desired to possess. *To give*—verb of the strong conjugation, Active, Transitive having for its object. '*Peace*,' Present of the Simple Infinitive used as the Subjective complement of the verb. '*Was*,' or in the nominative case, same case as '*Aim*.' *Peace to the country*—England was a divided nation during the wars of the Roses, consequently the industry and prosperity of the country, which is a natural outcome of internal peace, was, for a time, checked in its progress. Now that Henry VII had come to the throne, he brought with him internal peace and its consequent growth of industry and prosperity. *To raise*—A Simple Infinitive same case as. '*Aim*.' *To raise the power of the crown*—to make the authority of the King supreme. *The barons*—refers to the great Earls of the North, the house of Percy etc., and refers in particular to Warwick, the King maker, of the house of Nevilles. Warwick had practically deposed Henry

VI, and helped mostly to raise Edward IV to the throne.

*N. B.*—Henry VII managed to raise the power of the King high above the barons chiefly by two means. (1) The prohibition of liveries to be given to the attendant of anyone but the King. (2) By taking possession of all the available artillery. Besides the great families of old became extinct during these Wars of the Roses.

*Set up*—raised to the throne. *Put down*—dethrone. *Character*—aspect, mode. *Feudal character*—The system by which the King gave lands to barons on condition that the possessor should take an oath of fealty and do military service in return. *Rare*—Occasional; seldom happening. *Assemblage*—gathering, meeting. *Monarchy*—here means the absolute power of the King. *Restraints*—Checks. *Patiently*—Slowly by degrees.

*N. B.*—Henry VII built up this power by his policy of peace at home and abroad. We have seen how he secured peace at home by prohibition of liveries, and the sole possession of cannons. He secured peace abroad by coming to an agreement with France, by restoring Kildare to the deputyship of Ireland, by giving his daughter in marriage to James King of Scotland. This flux of foreign dangers and treaties brought about peace with Spain.

*Built up*—Set up, erected, made firm. *Stirring temper*—Active habits and excitable nature. It has been said that Henry VIII was, as a youth, the best athlete of his day. *Led him*—induced him; inclined him. *To seek*—A noun infinitive, factitive Object, or objective complement of the verb. '*Led.*' *Corresponding influence*—Events of a similar exciting nature. *Guidance*=direction. *Cardinal Wolsey*—The son of a wealthy townsman of Ipswich whose ability had raised him into notice at the close of the preceding reign, and was taken into the service of the crown. From the post of Royal Almoner, he was raised to the see of Lincoln then to the bishopric of York. In 1515 Henry VIII made him a cardinal, and then raised him to the post of Chancellor. He directed both Home and Foreign affairs for Henry VIII, his fall was brought about by his trying to put off the divorce which Henry

wanted from Catherine of Aragon his Queen. Wolsey had a noble bearing, and varied ability, and an enormous capacity for toil.

*Mixed in*—took part in. *The great contest*—This was between Francis I of France and Charles V Archduke of Austria, King of Spain, and now chosen emperor by the Germans to succeed his grandfather Maximilian. *Waging*—carrying on; were engaged in. *For*—in order to gain. *Supremacy*—First power. *Continent*—Europe. *Sought*—Wished to gain. *Alliance*—Friendship. *Rival* here means simply opponent. *Declared wars*—A technical term meaning finally decided upon war and undertook to wage it. *Spurring*—Inciting—verb of the weak conjugation, Active, Transitive, having for its object. ‘*The Scots*,’—here a Gerund, objective case governed by the preposition *By*. *Border*—The dividing line between England and Scotland.

PARA. I.—*To close in*—a Gerundial Infinitive of purpose modifying the verb ‘*rises*,’—having for its object ‘*Flat*.’ *Extensive*—large; wide-spread. *Eminence*—high ground; hill. *Slopes*—inclines. *Extended*—wide. *Level ground*—even ground. *Drawn up*—A military technical phrase meaning arranging in battle order. *At great advantage*—with the greater favourable means. *Liked the idea.....so ill*—Surrey did not like the idea at all of venturing an attack on that position, i.e., He thought that there would be a great risk of losing the battle if he attempted to assault such a formidable position as the Scots had. *Venturing*—attempt implying risk. *Assault*—attack. *Position*—‘*Piece of level ground*’ where the Scots had drawn up their army. *Resolved*—determined. *To try*—a simple infinitive, objective case governed by ‘*resolved*.’ *Prevail on*—induce. *To abandon*—to give up. *Herald*—a messenger. In the middle ages and still later, these heralds performed the duty of messengers. They used

grandiloquent language, and were considered the mouth-piece of the Kings. *To invite*—A heraldic term meaning to ask courteously. A Gerundial Infinitive of purpose modifying the verb '*sent*'—having for its object the Simple Infinitive '*to come down*' which is equal to the noun clause '*that he should come down.*' *Join*—A Simple Infinitive object of '*to invite.*' *Join battle*—to fight a pitched battle, a battle that would decide the issue of the day. *Reminded him of the readiness*—A Principal clause in contracted cumulative co ordination with the first Principal clause, having the connective (and) understood before the clause. *Readiness*—willingness. *Accepted*—another heraldic term in answer to the challenge. *Hinted*—made an indirect allusion incidentally. *Chivalry*—Lit : it means 'Truth and Honour, Freedom and Courtesy'—here it means the English knights and warriors of the higher ranks. *De'ay*—putting off. *Encounter*—meeting; battle. *Sound to*—point to, indicate as a sign. *Rash*—hasty. *Impudent*—incautious. *Impetuosity*—rashness. *Pitch*—extreme. *Became*—was fit for *It became*—here it is redundant.

PARA. II.—*Distressed for*—sorely in need of. *To resort*—to have recourse to. *Mode*—method. *Bringing to action*—making them fight. *Sweeping*—making a detour; taking a circuitous way. *Reach*—the limit of the distance up to which the cannons could throw their shells and ball. *Placed himself*—took up to certain position. *Suffered*—allowed. *Flank movement*—the moving of an army on either the right or the left of the opposing army. *Interruption*—opposition or check. *Afforded*—given. *Repeated and advantageous opportunities for attack*—the Scots could have many times charged the English with success; they got so many good chances for doing so, but they did not. *Interposed*—come between. *Lest he should be cut-off from Scotland*—thinking that he might not be able to

make his way back to Scotland through this English army which had come between himself and his kingdom. *Apprehension*—fear; alarm. *Confirmed*—given greater cause to fear. *Counsel*—advice. *Upon the occasion*—at this moment or crisis; important moment. *Lay waste the whole country*—carry ruin and destruction throughout Scotland. *Stimulated*—roused. *Resolved*—determined. *To give signal for the fatal battle*—To send the word round to prepare for the battle which proved fatal to them. *With this view*—for this purpose. *Refuse*—filth. *Letter*—Scattered objects such as straw, etc. *Under its cover*—hidden by it. *Eminence*—height. *Concealed*—perfect participle qualifying both.

A CLAUSE ANALYSIS OF THE LAST SENTENCE :—

*The smoke spread.....clouds of smoke.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (1) The smoke spread along<br>the side of the hill.  | } A Principal clause.  |
| (2) And under its cover the<br>army of king James<br>descended the eminence.   |  |
| (3) Which is much less steep<br>on the northern than on<br>the southern side.  | } Another Principal clause<br>cumulative co-ordination<br>with the 1st Principal<br>clause.    |
| (4) While the English advanced<br>to meet them, both<br>them, both concealed<br>from each other by the<br>clouds of smoke. |  |
|  | } An adjective clause to<br>the second principal<br>clause qualifying 'Eminence.'              |
|  |  |
|  | } An adverbial clause of<br>time to the second prin-<br>cipal clause modifying<br>'descended.' |
|  |  |

THE WHOLE IS A COMPLEX SENTENCE.

PARA. III.—*Columns*—bodies of troops drawn up in deep files. *Parallel to each other*—In a line. *Reserve*—a military technical term, meaning a part of the army kept to back for emergency or further help to the main

body. *Lothian men*—men who had come to fight from the district of Lothian.

PARA. IV.—*Encountered*—met in the shock of battle. *Overpowered*—defeated ; overwhelmed. *Threw into disorder*—Scattered. *Standard*—flag, colours of his regiment. *Instant*—immediate. *Relieved*—saved, rescued. *Outlaws*—here refers to the border robbers. *Extricated*—freed him from danger and death. \* *To have kept the victors in check*—did not let the victors overwhelm them and gain a complete victory. \* *To have kept*—A Simple Infinitive, Complement of 'Appears'. *Lord high Admiral*—A post of distinction in the British Navy, the first sea-lord gets this title only. *Bore down*—advanced and attacked ; a naval technical term. *Routed*—defeated. *Thus matters went on*—The battle continued in this manner there being even chances of success on both sides. *Insufferably annoyed*—troubled to such an extent that they could not endure it any longer. *Volleys*—discharge. *Broke their ranks*—could not hold together, but left their places in the column and rushed forward to attack the enemy. *In despite of*—inspite of, against. *Cries, entreaties and signals etc.*—The Scotch were so galled by the volleys of English arrows that they would not heed the orders and wishes of their commanding officer which was 'not to break rank and attack.' *Rushed tumultuously*—charged with great noise and in disorder. *Routed*—defeated.

PARA. V.—*The choicest*—The very best part.

*Analysis of the first sentence.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (1) The only Scotch division<br>was commanded by<br>James in person. | } Principal clause.                       |
| (2) Which remains to be<br>mentioned.                                |   |
|  | } Adjective clause qualifying 'division.' |

- (3) And consisted of the choicest of his nobles and gentry. } Another principal clause in cumulative co-ordination with the 1st principal clause.
- (4) Whose armour was so good. } Adj. clause qualifying 'nobles and gentry.'
- (5) That the arrows made but slight impression upon them. } An adverb clause of effect to clause (4) modifying the adjective 'good.'

*Impression*—dint. *They engaged the Earl of Surrey*—They drew their forces in opposition to the Earl of Surrey and began fighting with him. *Had the better*—got the advantage over them. *Squadrons*—companies of soldiers. *Disordered*—broke the formation of their squadron. *Undaunted*—fearless. *Obstinately*—stubbornly for a long time, refusing to give ground and acknowledge defeat. *Bill*—a kind of battle-axe with a point on the side opposite to the sharp side. *Ghastly*—dreadful. *Carnage*—slaughter. *Despatched*—finished, killed. *Hold each other at bay*—each one did not allow the other to get any advantage over himself. *Drew off*—Retreated, withdrew. *Silent despair*—in an utterly hopeless condition without making any noise.

PARA. VI.—*Decisive victory*—a victory which settled once for all the dispute between England and Scotland. *Rank and Quality*—the nobility and gentry. *Men of distinction*—men belonging to noble families. *Mitred abbots*—Only abbots of high rank were allowed to wear the mitre, a kind of head-dress for priests of high rank. *Beyond calculation*—could not be numbered. *Family of name*—Family of repute, of a good class.

PARA. VII.—*Affirm*—assert with conviction. *To be mistaken*—a passive gerundial infinitive used as an



adverb of effect modifying the verb '*knew*.' *Acknowledged*—Admitted as a fact. *Relics*—remains, here it means the dead body. *Singular*—unique, peculiar. *Degrading*—disgraceful. *Committed to the tomb*—buried properly in a tomb with due ceremony as became the dead body of a king. *Committed to*—put into (lit: given in charge of). *Alliance*—friendly terms. *Ex-communication*—the prohibition of men to mix with the man under this sentence, and the priests could not give such a person the holy sacrament or do any other religious ceremony for him. He was in a way practically ostracised from society of all truly God-fearing and religious men. *Pronounce the funeral service over them*—No priest could therefore repeat the burial ceremony over the remains of the king. *Embalmed*—Preserved from decay by aromatic drugs.

*Lapped up*—covered over. *Suffered*—allowed. *To toss about*—to be thrown about from place to place. *Lumber*—Useless waste material. *Waste-room*—A room in which all lumber is kept. *Hewed off*—cut off. *Master-glazier*—chief person whose business it was to set glass to window frames etc. *Sexton*—an attendant of a church whose business it is also to dig graves. *Charnel house*—a house where the bones of the dead are kept.

---

### ADDITIONAL NOTES.

The battle of Flodden field was the consequence of Henry VIII's taking the side of Charles V who had succeeded the Emperor Maximilian. Francis I of France was the rival of Charles V for the Supremacy of his power over Europe, so he incited the Scotch under James IV to invade England in order that Henry VIII may not be able to lend any help to the House of Austria. It was really the French queen who sent word to James IV that she would consider him alone to be

her knight if he but took three feet of English ground on the border. This fired his chivalric spirit and he crossed the border and captured a castle or so, and after that encamped near Flodden field. The Earl of Surrey who had been put in charge of the northern counties of England near the border got together as many men as he possibly could and went out to meet James IV.

The Scotch were in every way fit for the battle, being well refreshed, and having a decided advantage over the English on account of their position; while the English were not properly clothed for the cold regions of the north and their provision were scanty. The Scotch had good cannons and were well armed with both offensive and defensive weapons. They had also forty French Captains who commanded their regiments and trained them for the occasion. The English on the other hand had only their arrows and bills besides a few other weapons of war. Taking all these into consideration it appears somewhat strange that the Scotch lost the battle, yet lose they did; and there is no question of want of military tactics, for both James IV and Surrey were clever men. It was a disastrous defeat for Scotland.

PARA. I.—The character of James IV is very slightly shown in his impetuosity or rashness and in his haughty reply to the challenge of Surrey, James IV was a wise king and under him Scotland prospered in every respect as it had never done so before. He was considered a pious king also, because of his many acts of charity and pilgrimages to shrines and fasting which he strictly observed.

PARA. II.—Under cover of the smoke James IV led his army against the English—this was a wise plan of James IV yet a historian says that it brought disaster to his army because the Scotch could not perceive the English; cavalry till it was right on top of them.

PARA. IV.—The French Ambassador was Lamotte. He went to and fro between James IV and the Queen of France with messages, and commanded a portion of the Scotch army in the field. He was chiefly instrumental in persuading James IV to invade England. Lamotte was really an envoy and not an ambassador as he is called here in the text. The difference between an ambassador and an envoy is that the former is a diplomatic minister of the highest order sent by one king or power to another, he and his suite are exempt from punishment for minor offences, and carries on the mission of his country for some years in the land ; while the latter is a messenger sent to transact business with a foreign government on special occasions only, and is a diplomatic minister of the second order, he has no such privileges as the ambassador.

PARA. VI.—The effects of this victory of the English over the Scotch was very far-reaching. The greater portion of the nobility and gentry being slain there were hardly any capable men left to guard Scotland. The elders, as they were called, of Scotland mustered at Edinburgh to defend their capital ; and there was universal mourning in Scotland, there was hardly a single family of note which had not lost either its head or heir. But the consequences were of the highest importance to Henry VIII, who could carry on his campaign in France without any hindrance or danger from nearer home, and if he had continued judiciously the war, there are some historians who say that he might have got back all that Henry V had conquered and which the Kings between these two had lost. Henry VIII did not follow up this advantage, instead he met Francis I in an interview at the historic field of the Cloth of Gold. Other historians say that this was the wisest policy that Henry could have followed.

PARA. VII.—The body of the king in spite of such

evidence was not believed to be his, because it was said that the king always wore an iron belt with small spikes round his waist next to his skin as a penitent, and the 'body which the English had did not have this belt.

---

### SUMMARY.

PARA. I.—The position of the two armies described. The Scottish army on Flodden hill, a position which could be defended with great advantage against the English who had taken up their position on the plain below called Millfield Plain. Surrey the Commander of the English army saw this and invited James IV who led his army to join battle down on the plain, but the king refused.

PARA. II.—So Surrey made a detour and placed his army between James and his kingdom in order that he might leave his strong position and fight on the plains below. This had its desired effect, James IV fearing that his kingdom now unprotected might be subjected to English ravage ordered the camps to be struck, and had all the refuse burnt, the smoke which went down the hill-side from this gave cover to his army as it descended.

PARA. III.—The Scotch put four columns to the front and kept a reserve of infantry, while the English also divided into four squadrons, but kept a cavalry regiment in reserve.

PARA. IV.—A description of the battle as it began. The right wing of the English under Sir Edmund Howard was defeated by the left wing of the Scotch, the English reserve here came in and checked the progress of the left wing of the Scotch. Then Thomas Howard the Lord High Admiral routed the Scotch division led by Montrose. Then the clans led by the

French ambassadors were routed with great slaughter by Sir Edward Stanley.

PARA. V.—Last of all the Scottish division led by James himself engaged the Earl of Surrey, and James was getting the better of Surrey when Stanley and the Lord High Admiral came and helped Surrey by attacking James on either flank, the Scottish reserve came in and the Scotch formed a ring round their standard with the king. The English assailed it again and again, but their arrows had no effect on the Scottish armour, then the English had recourse to halberds or bills and with this created a great havoc in the Scottish rank. The King was slain and a portion of the Scottish army crept away at night.

PARA. VI.—The English losses were five thousand men slain while the Scotch had lost twice as much, but the English had lost very few men of distinction while the Scotch had lost the greater portion of their nobility and gentry together with their King.

PARA. VII.—The body of James IV was carried to Berwick and presented to Surrey, the remains were not buried in any tomb as James IV had been excommunicated by the Pope and so no priest dared to read the burial service over his body. The royal corpse was embalmed and kept in the monastery of Sheen in Surrey. Then at the Reformation when the monastery was given to the Duke of Suffolk, the body was thrown into a lumber-room wrapped in a sheet of lead. Afterwards it was buried in the Charnel-house by the Sexton of St. Michael's, Wood-Street.

---

# VOCABULARY.

—: o :—

*Asscmblage*—gathering.  
*Abroad*—On the continent;  
 away from England.  
*Alliance*—friendship.  
*Avenged*—revenged; took  
 vengeance  
*Advantage*—gain; profit.  
*Assault*—attack.  
*Abandon*—give up.  
*Action*—battle.  
*Afforded*—given.  
*Apprehension*—fear.  
*Assailed*—attacked.  
*Affirm*—assert.  
*Became*—was fit for.  
*Confirmed*—strengthened.  
*Counsel*—advice.  
*Choicest*—The pick or the  
 very best portion.  
*Larnage*—blood shed.  
*Calculation*—counting.  
*Charnel-house*—a house  
 where the bones of the  
 dead are kept.  
*Distressed*—suffering sore-  
 ly.  
*Determined*—firm; reso-  
 lute.  
*Despatched*—killed.  
*Decided*—settled; deter-  
 mined.

*Decisive*—Which deter-  
 mines once for all.  
*Degrading*—de basing,  
 humiliating.  
*Extensive*—Wide-spread-  
 ing; far-reaching.  
*Eminence*—high place;  
 hill  
*Encounter*—Meeting; bat-  
 tle.  
*Extricated*—set free.  
*Extreme*—at the very end.  
*Entreaties*—earnest re-  
 quests.  
*Embalmed*—preserved by  
 means of balms and  
 oils.  
*Flat*—level ground.  
*Flank*—Side; wing.  
*Funeral*—Burial.  
*Flung*—Thrown.  
*Gentry*—class of gentle-  
 men.  
*Ghastly*—horrible.  
*Hewed off*—Cut off.  
*Influence*—effect.  
*Imprudent*—rash; unwise.  
*Impetuosity*—rashness;  
 hastiness.  
*Interruption*—check.  
*Insufferably*—unbearably.

<i>Impression</i> —effect, di n t, mark.	<i>Pronounce</i> —Read out.
<i>Lumber</i> —useless waste material.	<i>Rash</i> —hasty.
<i>Monarchy</i> —Absolutism of kings.	<i>Resort to</i> —have recourse to ; adopt.
<i>Monastery</i> —The house where monks live.	<i>Refuse</i> —filth.
<i>Provisions</i> —Supplies (of food etc.).	<i>Relieved</i> —set free.
<i>Presented</i> —brought before.	<i>Stirring</i> —rousing.
	<i>Spurring</i> —Inciting.
	<i>Service</i> —ceremony ; rites.
	<i>Undaunted</i> —fearless.

# OUR OWN PUBLICATIONS.

FOR

MATRICULATION EXAMINATION 1914.

Rs. as. p.

*Annotations on Green's Readings from English History, Part II*, containing exhaustive notes, full explanations, Historical, Geographical and Biographical Allusions, Model Questions and Answers, Parsing and Analysis, Glossary, &c., &c., by M. C. Roy, Head Master, Church Mission High School, Lucknow, Number of pages in the book=450, ... .. 1 0 0

*Annotations on Peeps at many Lands : England*, containing copious notes accurate explanations, Model Question with their Answers, etc. etc., 2nd Edition, Revised, and Enlarged by Prof. Sailgram Dwivedi, M.A, L.L. B., (Author of Notes on Little Duke) ... .. 1 0 0

*Matriculation English Poems prescribed for 1914*, ... .. 0 1 0

*Matriculations English Poems*—with exhaustive notes, explanations prose order, Lives of Poets, hints on the right method of teaching and studying English, Model Questions and Answers, and a full glossary, by M.C. Roy, Head Master, Church Mission High School, Lucknow ... .. 1 0 0

*Hathorne's Tanglewood Tales*, containing all the six Stories, neatly bound ... .. 0 8 0



Rs. as. p.

*Annotation on Tanglewood Tales*, by  
P. P. Banerji, B. A., ... .. 1 0 0

*Question and Answers on Morison's  
New Geography of an Indian Province*,  
by Ganpat Sahai Varma, B.A., L.L. B., ... .. 0 6 0

*Matriculation Physics*, by Prof. Sohan  
Lal Srivastava, M.A. B. Sc., and Prof.  
Satyendra Nath Ray, M. Sc., B. A., Junior  
Professor of Physics, Canning College,  
Lucknow. 2nd Edition, Revised and En-  
larged ... .. 0 12 0

*Matriculation Chemistry Made Easy*, by  
Uma Nath Mukerji, B.A., (based on Jone's  
Chemistry) ... .. 0 8 0

*A Class-Room Guide to Matriculation  
Chemistry*, by K.P. Dube, M.A. B. Sc.,  
L.L. B., ... .. 0 8 0

*Notes on E. G. Hill's Chemistry for  
Indian School*, by N. Bose, B. Sc., ... .. 0 6 0

*A Guide to Oman's Junior History of  
England*, by Ganpat Sahai Varma, B. A.,  
L.L. B., ... .. 0 10 0

*A Complete Key and Translation of  
Ramkahani*, by Raj Bahadur Srivastava,  
Langora B. A., ... .. 0 8 0

*N. B.*—All other books prescribed for Matriculation and  
other examinations, Dictionaries, Letter-writers, Stationary,  
and other educational materials are kept in stock.

*Apply to—*

MESSRS. GIRDHARI LAL BANWARI LAL,

*Publishers Booksellers and Stationers.*

< COLONELGUNJ, ALLAHABAD.

